

Collins

BESTSELLING BILINGUAL DICTIONARIES

easy learning

French

Conversation

IN COLOUR

Digital Edition

Collins

BESTSELLING BILINGUAL DICTIONARIES

easy learning

French

Conversation

IN COLOUR

Digital Edition

Giftbooks4u.com

HarperCollins Publishers

Westerhill Road

Bishopbriggs

[Your Click Matters](#)

Glasgow
G64 2QT
Great Britain

First Edition 2006

Reprint 10 9 8 7 6 5

© HarperCollins Publishers 2006

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this e-book on screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of HarperCollins.

EPUB Edition © June 2011 ISBN 978-0-00-744456-4

Collins® and Bank of English® are registered trademarks of HarperCollins Publishers Limited

www.collinslanguage.com

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Typeset by Wordcraft, Glasgow

Printed in Italy by LEGO Spa, Lavis (Trento)

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank those authors and publishers who kindly gave permission for copyright material to be used in the Collins Word Web. We would also like to thank Times Newspapers Ltd for providing valuable data.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher. This book is sold subject to the conditions that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Entered words that we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

When you buy a Collins dictionary or thesaurus and register on www.collinslanguage.com for the free online and digital services, you will not be charged by HarperCollins for access to Collins free Online Dictionary content or Collins free Online Thesaurus content on that website. However, your operator's charges for using the internet on your computer will apply. Costs vary from operator to operator. HarperCollins is not responsible for any charges levied by online service providers for accessing Collins free Online Dictionary or Collins free Online Thesaurus on www.collinslanguage.com using these services.

HarperCollins does not warrant that the functions contained in www.collinslanguage.com content will be uninterrupted or error free, that defects will be corrected, or that www.collinslanguage.com or the server that makes it available are free of viruses or bugs. HarperCollins is not responsible for any access difficulties that may be experienced due to problems with network, web, online or mobile phone connections.

Giftbooks4u.com

PUBLISHING DIRECTOR Lorna

Knight

EDITORIAL DIRECTOR Michela

Clari

MANAGING EDITOR Maree

Airlie

PROJECT CO-ORDINATOR

Gaëlle Amiot-Cadey

CONTRIBUTORS

Jeremy Butterfield Laurent

Jouet

Giftbooks4u.com

[Your Click Matters](#)

William Collins' dream of knowledge for all began with the publication of his first book in 1819. A self-educated mill worker, he not only enriched millions of lives, but also founded a flourishing publishing house. Today, staying true to this spirit, Collins books are packed with inspiration, innovation, and practical expertise. They place you at the centre of a world of possibility and give you exactly what you need to explore it.

Language is the key to this exploration, and at the heart of Collins Dictionaries is language as it is really used. New words, phrases, and meanings spring up every day, and all of them are captured and analysed by the Collins Word Web. Constantly updated, and with over 2.5 billion entries, this living language resource is unique to our dictionaries.

Words are tools for life. And a Collins Dictionary makes them work for you.

Collins. Do more.

Giftbooks4u.com

Contents

Introduction *What is it?*

Why do you need it? How is it structured?

How does it work?

Why choose Collins Easy Learning French Conversation?

The Collins Easy Learning range

French pronunciation

Units

[Your Click Matters](#)

Small talk
the language of social interaction

Getting there
travelling around

Home from home
organizing your accommodation

Wining and dining *eating*
out

Hitting the town
going out and socializing

Museums, monuments and much more
seeing the sights

Retail therapy
doing some shopping

Service with a smile
dealing with various services

Ouch!
looking after your health

Help! *copng with di erent*
problems

Getting in touch
making calls, sending emails and letters

Time, numbers, date
everything you need to know

In summary...
a quick reference guide

One-stop phrase shop
the phrases you need for everyday conversation

Grammar

Verb tables

Vocabulary builder

Giftbooks4u.com

Introduction

What is it?

Collins Easy Learning French Conversation is a completely new type of book for learners of French of all ages. It will increase your confidence in holding a conversation in French, whether you are just starting to learn French, studying at school or at an evening class, or brushing up your language skills. You may be going on holiday or planning to go travelling in a French-speaking country, go there on business, or live there. Whatever your situation, you'll want to be able to communicate effectively and naturally in French.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Why do you need it?

Becoming proficient in a foreign language means being able to use and understand a number of different aspects – vocabulary, grammar, pronunciation, and so on. However, it takes a while to be able to put all these elements together and be sure that what you are saying sounds like natural French. The *Easy Learning French Conversation* has been carefully designed to bring these aspects together and give you language structures which you can use in conversation with confidence, knowing that you will be speaking French as spoken by French speakers.

How is it structured?

Collins Easy Learning French Conversation is made up of 12 units, each illustrating the language used in a particular situation, followed by a summary which brings together the key phrases covered throughout the units. You'll also find the **One-stop phrase shop** – a unit which contains all the important expressions and turns of phrase that help you to sound more natural in French.

A short grammar and verbs supplement gives you additional language support, ensuring that you have everything at your fingertips. Finally, the English-French glossary covers the most important vocabulary you may need to personalize your conversation.

How does it work?

Language allows us to express ourselves and interact with others. In any given situation, we perform different language tasks, such as asking for information, agreeing and disagreeing, complaining, making suggestions and so forth. To do this, we use linguistic structures (*How...?*, *When...?*, *Could I...?*, *I'd like...* and so on) which can be used in a variety of contexts. Each unit in *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* gives

[Your Click Matters](#)

you all the phrases you might need in a given situation, grouped by structure. English headings help you navigate through the structures to enable you to find what you want quickly and easily. Throughout the units, there are also tips headed **Bon à savoir!** which highlight important differences in the way English and French work.

A conversation, by definition, is a two-way process. It is as important to understand what is being said to you as it is to be able to respond. At the end of each unit, there is a section headed **Listen out for**. Each of these sections gives you a variety of the most typical phrases which you might hear in a given situation. Becoming familiar with these will allow you to have a successful conversation with a French speaker. For further help with pronunciation, a free download with all the important structures recorded is available on www.collinslanguage.com/easyconversation.

Communicating effectively in French isn't just about linguistic competence – it's also about cultural knowledge. For you to feel confident in a French-speaking country, it is also useful to know more about French culture and lifestyle. At the end of each unit, the **Lifestyle Tips** will give you the information you need to gain a deeper insight into the language, the country and its people.

Why choose *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation*?

- **easy to use** all the key language structures you need to give you the confidence to hold a conversation in natural French
- **easy to read** a clear, modern layout which allows you to find what you need quickly and easily
- **easy to understand** the language you may hear from French speakers in a given situation
- **easy to speak** free audio download available on www.collinslanguage.com/easyconversation

The Collins Easy Learning range

The *Collins Easy Learning French Conversation* is the latest addition to the best-selling *Collins Easy Learning* range, which includes the highly acclaimed *Collins Easy Learning French Dictionary*. *Collins Easy Learning French Grammar* and *Collins Easy Learning French Verbs* support you with all your grammatical needs, and the *Collins Easy Learning French Words* allows you to learn and practise your French vocabulary. The *Collins Easy Learning* series is the ideal language reference range to help you learn French.

French pronunciation

There are some sounds in French which need a bit of practice, such as the French **r**, which is much more noticeable than an English *r*, and the very sharp **u** sound to be heard in words like **rue** and **plu**, which is different from the *oo* sound in an English word like *ruin*.

Silent letters

As in English, not all the letters in French words are pronounced – especially nasal consonants. The nasal consonant is not sounded in the following, for example: **vert** (*green*), **grand** (*tall*), **petit** (*small*), and **ouvert** (*open*). However, if the nasal consonant is followed by an **e**, for example in the feminine form of the adjective, the consonant is pronounced. The feminine forms **verte**, **grande**, **petite**, and **ouverte** all end with consonant sounds.

French vowels

These are the main ways in which French vowels are pronounced:

- *a* as in *fat* (patte, casserole)

[Your Click Matters](#)

a aw (bas, cas)
followed by n: *en* as in *encore* (dans, sans, plan)
– *uh* (le, premier, repas) *e* as in
set (merci, restaurant)

e followed by n: *en* as in *encore* (vent, entrer,
cent)
followed by r: *ay* (parler, dîner)

é – *ay* (occupé, région) **è** – *ai* as in *air* (père,
règle) **i** – *ee* (il, billet, vie, samedi)

followed by n: *a* as in *sang* (matin, fin, vin)

o – *oho* as in (mot, pspotoser) (donner, mort)

u – followed by n: *u* as in *sung* (lundi, brun)

To make the **u** sound for words like **rue** and **pure**, place your lips as if you were going to whistle and make a sharp *ee* sound at the front of your mouth.

Vowel combinations

ai – followed by n: *e* as in *set* (maisa as in , lait) *sang* (pain, copain)

au – o as in *gosh* (gauche) **eu** – euh (peu,
deux) **eau** – oh (couteau) **ou**– oo (genou,
couscous)

BON À SAVOIR!

Two words you will often hear – **oui** (*yes*) and **lui** (*him*) are examples of a breathy *w* sound – they’re pronounced rather like *hwee* and *lwhee*.

French consonants

Most French consonants are pronounced the same as their English equivalents. Some consonants, however, are pronounced

differently depending on which vowel follows:

– *k* as in *keen* when it is followed by **a**, **o** or **u**
(cadeau, couteau, cumin) – note that when

c a cedilla (like *s* in *sitç*) is added to the *ça*, *garçon*, *déçu*)**c**, it will sound

– *s* as in *ceiling* when it is followed by **e**, **i** or **y**
(séance, citron, cyprès)

ch – *sh* as in *shop* (chemise, mouchoir)

g – *g* as in *gate* when it is followed by **a**, **o** or **u**
(gaz, égouter, aigu)

– *s* as in *leisure* when it is followed by **e**, **i** or **y**
(juge, gilet, gym)

gn – *ni* as in *onion* (oignon, campagne) **j** – *s* as in *leisure*

(jeter, Jules) **q, qu** – *k* as in *keen* (chaque, question)

s – *z* as in *zoo* when it is between vowels
(heurese, oiseau)

– *s* as in *sit* when it isn't (cassé, sauce, désastre)

th – *t* as in *take* (maths, thermostat, théâtre) **t in -tion** – *s* as in *sit*

(natation, natinal)

Some consonants are pronounced differently to English:

h – when it begins a word, it can be 'silent' (l'homme, un hôtel) or 'aspirate' (les haricots, le hall). When the **h** is silent, the word behaves as though it starts with a vowel and forms a liaison with the preceding word where appropriate (see below). When the **h** is aspirate, no liaison is made.

r – (rue, : a raspy sound in the back of the throat rouge, rare) **ll** – *y*

as in *yes* (lle, paille)

BON À SAVOIR!

Note, however, that **mille** (*one thousand*) is pronounced to rhyme with *peel*.

Stress

In English words, a particular syllable is stressed (*concert*, *dentist*), whereas in French each syllable has its own length and each is pronounced with the same intensity.

Liaison

Liaison is what happens when a French word ending in a consonant which would usually be silent, for example, **petit** (*small*), **les** (*the*), precedes a word starting with a vowel or a 'silent' **h**. The silent consonant is sounded to make the words flow more easily. **petit ami** (*boyfriend*) is pronounced puh-teet-ah-mee (the **t** at the end of **petit** is sounded) **les hôtels** (*hotels*) is pronounced layz-oh-tel (the **s** at the end of **les** sounds like a z)

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Comment ça va? – How are things?**

Whether you're going to be working in a French-speaking country or you're going to spend some time with your French-speaking friends, you'll want to be able to chat with people and get to know them better. The phrases in this unit will help you talk naturally to friends, family and colleagues in a number of everyday situations.

GREETINGS

Just as in English, there are several ways of greeting people in French, depending on who you are addressing, and

[Your Click Matters](#)

whether you want to be formal or not. Say **bonjour** **Madame/Mademoiselle/Monsieur** if you want to sound polite and just **bonjour** to someone you know a little. If you're on friendly terms with someone, you can say **Salut!** (*Hi!*).

Hello...

Bonjour.

Hello.

Bonjour Madame.

Good morning.

Bonjour Pierre.

Good afternoon Pierre.

Salut Olivier!

Hi Olivier!

Bonsoir.

Good evening.

BON À SAVOIR!

In French there is no equivalent for *good morning* and *good afternoon* – people just say **bonjour** during the day or **bonsoir** in the evening.

Use **au revoir Madame/Mademoiselle/Monsieur** to say goodbye to people you don't know well. You can just say **au revoir** to people you know, or use **Salut!** (*Bye!*) if you are on friendly terms with them.

Goodbye...

Au revoir Monsieur.

Goodbye. Au revoir Mademoiselle.

Goodbye.

Salut!

Bye!

Bonsoir.

Goodnight.

See you...

À plus tard!

See you later!

À demain!

See you tomorrow!

À lundi!

See you on Monday!

INTRODUCING PEOPLE

You may want to introduce people you know to one another. The simplest way is by saying **voici** (*this is*) when introducing a person. You can also use **je te présente** (*I'd like you to meet*) when addressing someone you know well, or **je vous présente** to be more formal or when speaking to several people.

This is...

Voici mon mari, Richard.

This is my husband, Richard.

Voici mes enfants: Andrew, Emma. **These are** my children, Andrew, Gordon et Gordon and Emma.

Je vous présente Danielle.

I'd like you to meet Danielle.

Je te présente Kevin, mon partner.

I'd like you to meet Kevin, my compagnon.

BON À SAVOIR!

When you're introduced to someone, you'll want to know how to react. The traditional **enchanté** should only be used in formal or business situations these days, and very often people just say **bonjour**.

TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF

[Your Click Matters](#)

In order to get the conversation going, you'll want to be able to talk about yourself – what your name is, what you do and so on. To say what your name is in French, you use the verb **s'appeler** which literally means *to call oneself*. The **s'** (*oneself*) changes to **m'** (*myself*) in **je m'appelle** (*my name is*). For more information on reflexive verbs like **s'appeler**, see [page 271](#).

My name is...

Je m'appelle Jean-Pierre Métayer.

My name is Jean-Pierre Métayer.

Je m'appelle Tarik.

My name is Tarik.

Il s'appelle André.

His name is André.

Elle s'appelle Lara.

Her name is Lara.

Vous vous appelez comment?

What's your name?

Moi, c'est Liam.

Hi, I'm Liam.

If you want to say how old you are, use **j'ai** followed by your age and **ans** (literally *I have... years*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

I'm...years old

J'ai trente-sept ans.

I'm thirty-seven **years old**.

J'ai vingt-deux ans.

I'm twenty-two.

Mon fils a huit ans.

My son's eight.

Vous avez quel âge?

How old are you?

BON À SAVOIR!

If you have to ask **Vous avez quel âge?**, you can always add **sans indiscretion** (*if you don't mind my asking*).

To talk about who you are and what you do, use **je suis** (*I am*). This comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [page 282](#).

Je suis une amie de Paul.

I'm a friend of Paul's.

Je suis le frère de Ben.

I'm Ben's brother.

Je suis célibataire.

I'm single.

Je travaille en tant que
programmeur pour l'entreprise
Dunier.

I work as a programmer for
the Dunier company.

Je suis enseignant.

I'm a teacher.

BON À SAVOIR!

When you say what you do in French, you don't put an article in front of the job name: *I'm a baker* is **je suis boulanger**. However, you do need an article when you address someone by their title, so *Mrs Chairwoman* is **Madame la Directrice**.

I have...

J'ai deux sœurs.

I have two sisters.

J'ai un ls et une lle.

I have daughter. one son and one

On a de la famille dans le sud de la France.
We have relatives in southern France.

Elle a les yeux bleus.

She has blue eyes.

Il a les cheveux châtain.

He has brown hair.

I live...

Je vis au pays de Galles.

I live in Wales.

Je vis seul.

I live alone.

On habite dans un appartement.

We live in a at.

BON À SAVOIR!

If you're female, you'll say **seule** (*alone*) rather than **seul**.

I'm staying...

Je suis descendu à l'hôtel du Palais.

I'm staying at the Palace Hotel.

Vous êtes descendu à quel hôtel? Which hotel at? **are you staying**

Je suis à Paris pour une semaine. **I'm staying** in Paris for a week. **Je loge** chez des amis. **I'm staying** with friends.

To say that you've done something for a given length of time, use **ça fait...** followed by a time word such as **jour** (*day*), **semaine** (*week*) or **an** (*year*) and the verb in the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

I have...for...

Ça fait cinq ans **que je** suis **I've been** a nurse **for** ve in rmière.
years.

Ça fait dix ans **que je** vis en **I've lived** in France **for** ten
France. years.

Je suis à Saint-Raphaël **depuis** **I've been** in Saint-Raphaël **for** deux
semaines. two weeks.

J'apprends le français **depuis** 6 **I've been** learning French **for** 6 mois.
months.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're chatting socially, you will want to ask any number of questions. One simple way of finding out information from someone is to say **parlez-moi** (*tell me*) to someone you don't know very well or **parle-moi** to someone you're on friendly terms with.

Tell me...

Parlez-moi de votre famille. **Tell me** about your family.

Parlez-moi un peu de vous. **Tell me** a bit about yourself.

Parle-moi de ton nouveau copain. **Tell me** about your new boyfriend.

Dis-moi en quoi consiste ton boulot. **Tell me** what your job involves.

Another handy way of asking for information in spoken French is to put **c'est** at the beginning of the sentence before the question word: **quoi** (*what*), **où** (*where*), **quand** (*when*) and so on.

What...?

C'est quoi ton adresse?

What's your address?

C'est quoi le numéro de téléphone **What's** Olivier's phone number?
number? d'Olivier?

Qu'est-ce que tu fais dans la vie?

What do you do?

À quoi elle ressemble? **What** does she look like? **Where...?**

Où est votre bureau?

Where is your office?

C'est où cette soirée?

Where is the party being held?

Où est-ce que tu travailles?

Where do you work?

Où est-ce que tu habites?

Where do you live?

Tu viens **d'où**?

Where do you come from?

Tu loges **où**? **Where** are you staying? **When...?**

C'est quand ton anniversaire?

When is your birthday?

Quand est-ce que tu arrives?

When will you be here?

Quand est-ce que Laurent doit arriver?

When is Laurent supposed to get here?

Quand est-ce que James vient nous rendre visite?

When is James coming to visit us?

À quelle heure on se retrouve?

What time are we meeting?

If you want to ask how long someone has been doing something, use **Ça fait longtemps que...?** (*How long have you...?*) followed by the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

How long have...?

Ça fait longtemps que tu es en France?

How long have you been in France?

Ça fait longtemps que tu working here?

How long have you been travailles ici?

Ça fait longtemps que vous

How long have you been attendez? waiting?

A very versatile way of asking someone socially how something is going or has gone is to use **Ça se passe bien,...?** (*How is...?*) or **Ça s'est bien passé,...?** (*How was...?*).

How...?

Ça s'est bien passé, tes vacances?

How was your holiday?

Ça s'est bien passé, votre vol?

How was your ight?

Ça se passe bien, à l'université?

How's university going?

Sometimes you'll want to ask why a friend or acquaintance did or didn't do something. You can use **Pourquoi...?** (*Why...?*) and the past tense to ask. For more information on the past tense, see [page 273](#).

Why...?

Pourquoi est-ce que tu ne m'as pas téléphoné?

Why didn't you call me?

Pourquoi est-ce que tu n'y es pas allé?

Why didn't you go?

Pourquoi est-ce que tu as déménagé?

Why did you move house?

Pourquoi est-ce qu'elle a démissionné?

Why_{job?} did she quit her

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

When you're talking to friends or colleagues you will often need to be able to talk about what you would like to do. To say what you want to do, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais te remercier de m'avoir aidé. **I'd like to** thank you for helping me.

Je voudrais parler à M. Gautier, s'il vous plaît. **I'd like to** speak to Mr Gautier, please.

On voudrait t'inviter à prendre un verre. **We'd like to** take you out for a drink.

On voudrait te présenter un ami. **We'd like** to introduce you to a friend.

You can also use **je veux** (*I want*) to talk about what you want to do. If you want to say that you want someone to do something, you use **je veux que** followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#). **I want to...**

Je veux organiser une soirée surprise. **I want to** organize a surprise party.

Je veux inviter quelques amis à mon anniversaire. **I want to** have a few friends over for my birthday.

Je veux que tu viennes avec moi. **I want you to** come with me.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Je veux quesoit réussie. la soirée **I want** the evening **to** be a success.
MAKING SUGGESTIONS

One easy way of making suggestions to your friends and colleagues is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **pourrait** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

We could...

On pourraitjoindre à nous. demander à Paul de se **We could** ask Paul to join us.

On pourraitmoment. se voir à un autre **We could** meet another time.

On pourrait prendre un verre un de **We could** go out for a drink ces jours. some time.

On pourrait se retrouver au Café de **We could** meet up at the Café la Poste. de la Poste.

Just as in English you can make a suggestion by simply asking **Pourquoi ne... pas?** (*Why don't...?*). You will notice that French speakers very often omit **ne** to make sentences shorter – this is mainly in spoken French.

Why don't...?

Pourquoi ne pas se donner rendez- **Why don't** we get together vous un de ces jours? sometime?

Pourquoi pas inviter Fabien et sa copine et son amie? **Why don't** we invite Fabien and his girlfriend?

Pourquoi pas déjeuner avec moi? **Why don't** you meet me for lunch?

Pourquoi tu ne les appelles pas? **Why don't** you phone them?

You can also make a suggestion using the French phrase **Et si...?** (*How about?*) which is followed by a verb in the imperfect tense. For more information on the imperfect tense, see [page 272](#).

How about...?

Et si on les invitait à dîner? **How about** dinner? asking them round for

Et si tu venais avec nous? **How about** if you came with us?

Et si je passais te prendre le matin? **How about** if I picked you up in the morning?

Use **Est-ce que je devrais...?** (*Should I...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive to ask if you should do something. **devrais** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

Should I...?

Est-ce que je devrais inviter Anna? **Should I** invite Anna?

Est-ce que je devrais la rappeler? **Should I** call her back?

Est-ce qu'on devrait aller dans un restaurant italien? **Should we** go to an Italian restaurant?

EXPRESSING OPINIONS

When talking to people in a social or work situation, you may wish to express your opinion of something. In French you can use **je crois** or **je pense** (*I think*). When you use **croire** and **penser** with a negative, as in **je ne pense pas que** or **je ne crois pas que**, the verb which follows is in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I think...

Je pense que Sonia a raison.

I think Sonia's right.

Je pense vraiment qu'il est trop tard I really **think** it's too late to pour aller au cinéma. go to the cinema.

Je pense qu'on devrait partir à **I think** we should leave at minuit. midnight.

Je ne pense pas que ça soit le cas du **I don't think** that's the case tout. at all.

Je crois que idée. c'est une excellente

I think it's a great idea.

BON À SAVOIR!

Don't forget to add **que** (*that*) after **croire** and **penser**. It's optional in English, but not in French.

In my opinion...

À mon avis, c'est une bonne **In my opinion**, it's a good proposition. suggestion.

À mon avis, ça va poser cause problems **In my opinion**, it's going to desproblèmes.

À mon avis, ce n'est pas vrai. **In my opinion**, it's not true.

À mon avis, c'est un bon société. **In my opinion**, it's a great employeur, cette company to work for

If you want to ask other people what they think of something, use **Qu'est-ce que tu penses de...?** (*What do you think of...?*).

What do you think of...?

Qu'est-ce que tu penses de
son dernier lm?

What do you think of his latest
movie?

Qu'est-ce que tu penses de
cette idée?

What do you think of this idea?

Qu'est-ce que vous diriez de
sortir dîner ce soir?

What do you think about going
out for dinner tonight

Qu'est-ce que vous en
pensez?

What do you think?

To agree or disagree with what other people say, use **je suis d'accord** or **je ne suis pas d'accord**.

I agree...

Je suis d'accord.

I agree.

Je suis d'accord avec Nigel.

I agree with Nigel.

Je ne suis pas d'accord avec cette
décision.

I don't agree with this
decision.

Je ne suis pas tout à fait **d'accord**
avec Claire.

I don't completely **agree**
with Claire.

Je suis entièrement **de ton avis!**

I entirely **agree with you!**

You're right...

Tu as raison!

You're right!

Je pense que **vous avez raison**. I think **you're right**.

C'est Matthieu **qui a raison**.

Matthieu's **right**.

Je crois que **tu as tort**.

I think **you're wrong**.

Tu as tort de ne pas l'écouter. **You're wrong not to** listen to her.

BON À SAVOIR!

Where we use the verb *to be* in English in the phrases *to be right* or *to be wrong*, French speakers use **avoir** (to have): **avoir raison** (to be right), **avoir tort** (to be wrong).

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When talking to your colleagues and friends you will want to tell them about your plans. In French, as in English, the present is very often used to talk about plans, especially for things that have been arranged and that are definite. For more on the present tense, see [page 272](#). **I'm seeing...**

Je vois Philippe jeudi.

I'm seeing Philippe on
Thursday.

Je la vois cet après-midi.

I'm seeing her this
afternoon.

On va au cinéma ce soir.

We're going to the cinema tonight.

Nous allons déjeuner ensemble vendredi prochain.

We're going for lunch next Friday.

In English, when we talk about the future we often say *I'm going to*. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before a verb in the infinitive.

vais and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#). **I'm going to...**

Je vais lui téléphoner.

I'm going to phone him.

Je vais le prévenir que je ne peux pas venir.

I'm going to let him know I can't come.

Je vais leur dire de venir un peu plus tard.

I'm going to tell them to come a little later.

On va sortir au restaurant demain soir.

We're going to go out for dinner tomorrow night

On va se revoir.

We're going to see each other again.

Are you going to...?

Est-ce que tu vas lui annoncer la nouvelle aujourd'hui?

Are you going to tell him the news today?

Est-ce que vous allez le revoir?

Are you going to see him again?

Tu vas aller à cette soirée?

Are you going to go to this party?

Tu vas acheter une maison?

Are you going to buy a house?

When talking about what you intend to do, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte** (*I intend to*) followed by a verb in the infinitive. **I intend to...**

J'ai l'intention de l'inviter à prendre un verre.

I intend to ask her out for a drink.

J'ai l'intention d'aller les voir cet été.

I intend to go and see them this summer.

On a l'intention de l'inviter pendant les vacances.

We intend to invite him during the holidays

Je compte régler ce problème le plus vite possible.

I intend to sort out this problem as quickly as possible

Do you intend to...?

Est-ce que tu as l'intention d'aller d'Yves et Julie? **Do you intend to** go to Yves au mariage and Julie's wedding

Est-ce que vous avez l'intention de **Do you intend to** get in les contacter? touch with them?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez l'intention dire? What **do you intend to** say?

Tu comptes rester dans la région? **Do you intend to** this area? stay in
Comment **est-ce que tu comptes** lui How **do you intend to** tell annoncer la nouvelle? him the news?

MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

[Your Click Matters](#)

When making arrangements with someone, use **Est-ce que ça vous va si...?** or **Est-ce que ça te va si..?** to ask someone if something suits them. **va** comes from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

Will it suit you if...?

Est-ce que ça te va si on dîne à neuf heures?

Does it suit you if we have dinner at nine?

Est-ce que ça vous va si je vous appelle la semaine prochaine?

Will it suit you if I phone you next week?

Ça t'irait comme arrangement?

Would this arrangement suit you?

To ask somebody if they would prefer something, use **Est-ce que tu préférerais que...?** or **Est-ce que vous préféreriez que...?** (*Would you prefer it if...?*), which comes from the verb **préférer** in the conditional. The conditional is very useful to make polite requests or offers. You can find out more about it on [page 274](#). For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page 270](#).

Would you prefer it if...?

Est-ce que tu préférerais qu'on se **Would you prefer it if** we donne rendez-vous en ville? met in town?

Est-ce que vous préféreriez qu'on se **Would you prefer it if** we retrouve au restaurant? met at the restaurant

Tu préférerais que je passe te came to collect you

Would you prefer it if I chercher?

Is it better to...?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux inviter aussi **Is it better to** invite partners les conjoints?as well?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux t'appeler le **Is it better to** ring you in the soir? evening?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux vous **Is it better to** let you know prévenir avant de passer? before we call in

If you want to confirm an arrangement with somebody, you can use **Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur...?** (*Are we agreed on...?*). **Are we agreed on...?**

Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur la date? **Are we agreed on** date? the

Est-ce qu'on est d'accord sur le lieu du **Are we agreed on** where rendez-vous? to meet?

Tu es d'accord?

Do you agree?

D'accord!

Agreed!

BON À SAVOIR!

D'accord is used to accept offers or to agree: **On y va ensemble? – D'accord!** (*Shall we go together? – OK!*). **SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO**

When you want to say that you have to do something in French, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I have to...

[Your Click Matters](#)

Il faut que je passe un coup de l. **I have to** make a phone call.

Il faut quesoir. je reste chez moi ce **I have to** stay in tonight.

Il faut qu'on y soit à huit heures **We have to** be there at eight o' pile.
clock sharp.

Je suis obligé de sortir dîner avec **I have to** go out to dinner with mes
collègues. my colleagues

Tu n'es pas obligé de loger à **You don't have to** stay at the l'hôtel.
hotel.

BON À SAVOIR!

To say that you don't have to do something, use **je ne suis pas obligé de**, not **il ne faut pas que je** which means *I mustn't*.

To say what you have to do, you can also use **je dois** (*I must*) and then the verb in the infinitive. **dois** comes from **devoir** which you can find out about on [page 281](#).

I must...

Je dois finir avant cet après-midi. **I must** finish before this afternoon.

Je dois les prévenir. **I must** warn them.

Je dois le rembourser cette semaine. **I must** pay him back this week.

Tu ne dois pas oublier de signer le contrat. **You mustn't** forget to sign the contract.

Vous ne devez en parler à personne. **You mustn't** tell anyone

When you want to say that you should or ought to do something, use **il faudrait que** (*I should*) and then the verb in the subjunctive. Like **faut**, **faudrait** comes from the verb **falloir**, but **faudrait** is the conditional. To find out more about the conditional and the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I should...

Il faudrait que j'appelle Anne.

I should call Anne.

Il faudrait que tu nous rendes visite.

You should come and visit us.

Il faudrait que je te donne mon numéro de portable.

I should give you my mobile number.

To ask what someone has to do or when, how, why or where they have to do it, put **qu'** (*what*), **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*), **pourquoi** (*why*), **où** (*where*) and so on at the beginning of the sentence, before **est-ce qu'il faut que** (*do you have to*). Remember that the verb after **il faut que** is in the subjunctive. To find out more about the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Do you have to...?

Est-ce qu'il faut que tu leur donnes
réponse aujourd'hui? an answer today

Do you have to give them une

Est-ce qu'il faut que tu partes tout de
now?

Do you have to go right suite?

Est-ce qu'il faut amener quelque
something?

Do we have to bring chose?

Qu'est-ce qu'il faut que tu fasses? What **do you have to** do? **Quand est-ce qu'il faut que ce soit** When **does it have to** be fini? finished?

Où **est-ce qu'il faut que je** m'assoie?

Where **do I have to** sit?

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases which you are likely to hear in conversation.

Vous êtes déjà allé à Lille?

Have you ever been to Lille?

Vous restez combien de temps
à Rouen?

How long are you staying in
Rouen?

Ça vous plaît, Rouen?

How do you like Rouen?

Vous apprenez le français depuis
combien de temps?

How long have you been
learning French?

Ça va, tu arrives à suivre?

Are you following the
conversation?

Vous parlez bien français.

Your French is very good.

Est-ce que je parle trop vite?

Am I speaking too fast?

Vous préférez que je parle anglais?

Would you prefer it if I spoke
English?

Vous voulez que je répète?

Would you like me to say it
again?

Vous voulez que je parle moins vite?
slowly?

Do you want me to speak
more

Tu peux me tutoyer.

You can call me tu.

On se tutoie?

Shall we call each other tu?

Vous êtes marié?

Are you married?

Vous avez des enfants?

Have you got any children?

Tu viens souvent ici?

Do you come here often?

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- The polite *you* (**vous**) is used to address people whom you don't know. It's also a way of showing respect to someone who's older than you, or, at work, to someone who's higher up in the hierarchy. People who work together on a daily basis usually say **tu** to each other, (**se tutoyer** – *to say tu to each other*) but it is safer to wait a little before taking that step. Many people do not like to be addressed as **vous**, because they think it's too formal. They will usually suggest you call them **tu**, saying **tu peux me tutoyer** or **on peut se tutoyer**. You can make the first move and ask **On se tutoie?**, if you think that the other person will be more comfortable using the **tu** form.

- When meeting someone for the first time, you usually shakehands (**serrer la main de quelqu'un**), whether it's a man or a woman. In business relations, at business appointments or at negotiations, shaking hands is very common. Men who are on friendly terms usually shake hands, while women kiss on both cheeks (**se faire la bise**). Men also kiss female friends and in some cases other men, for instance when they belong to the same family. Bear in mind that habits may be different depending on where you are in France, which is why French people themselves often get confused; for instance

[Your Click Matters](#)

the number of kisses you give someone to say hello varies from one area to another!

- The words **ami** and **copain** (and the feminine forms **amie** and **copine**) can either mean *friend* or *boyfriend/girlfriend*. If someone uses **mon copain** for instance, they could be either be talking about a male friend or their boyfriend. The expressions **petit(e) ami(e)** and **petit(e) copain/copine** can also be used to mean *boyfriend* and *girlfriend*. To say *my partner*, use **mon compagnon** for a man and **ma compagne** for a woman.

- French people socialize in cafés and restaurants as British people do, but it is probably more common in France than in Britain to invite people, be it for coffee (**pour prendre le café**), for the apéritif (**pour prendre l'apéritif** or **l'apéro**) or for dinner (**pour le dîner**). Traditionally, **le café** or **l'apéritif** are ways of getting to know people more, while **le dîner** (and lunch, **le déjeuner**) are an opportunity for people who already know each other well, or families, to spend time together.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Bon voyage!** – Have a good trip!

If you're going to be travelling to and around French-speaking countries and cities, the phrases in this unit will help you ask for directions, find out how to get to places and buy tickets in easy, everyday French.

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When you're travelling around, you will probably want to talk about what you're going to do. Use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. These come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

[Your Click Matters](#)

I'm going to...

Je vais passer une journée à

Avignon.

Je vais prendre le train de sept heures.

On va passer deux nuits à Argelès. **We're going to** spend two nights in Argelès.

Ensuite, **on va** aller à Grenoble. Then **we're going to** go to Grenoble.

Normalement, **on va** d'abord à Strasbourg. If all goes well, **we'll be going to** Strasbourg.

BON À SAVOIR!

Use **normalement** or **si tout va bien** (*if all goes well*) at the beginning of a sentence to talk about a plan that might have to be changed.

I'll...

Je vais t'emmener à la gare. **I'll** take you to the station.

Ne t'en fais pas, prendre le bus. **je vais** Don't worry, **I'll** get the bus.

On va t'appeler un taxi. **We'll** call you a taxi.

On va venir te chercher à la gare. **We'll** come and pick you up at the railway station.

If you want to talk about what your plans are, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** (*I'm planning to*).

I'm planning to...

J'ai l'intention de louer une voiture. **de louer une** I'm planning to hire a car.

J'ai l'intention d'aller au Maroc. **I'm planning to** go to Morocco.

On a l'intention de suivre la route côtière. **We're planning to** drive along the coast.

Je compte passer deux jours à Santiago. **I intend to** spend two days in Santiago.

I hope to...

J'espère aller en Alsace cette année. **I hope to** go to Alsace this year.

J'espère voir la Bibliothèque François Mitterrand **I hope to** see the François Mitterrand Library.

On espère pouvoir tout visiter. **We hope** everything. we can visit

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

If you want to say that you have to do something in French, such as buy a ticket, catch a train and so on, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) or **il faudrait que** (*I ought to*) followed by the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I have to...

Il faut que j'achète mon billet demain. **I have to** tomorrow. buy my ticket

Il faut d'abord que je prenne le Train Régional jusqu'à Niort. **I have to** take the local Express train to Niort rst.

Il faut qu'on y soit avant 8 heures. **We have to** o'clock. be there by 8

I ought to...

Il faudrait que je fasse le plein. **I ought to** ll up the tank.

Il faudrait que je con rme mon vol. **I ought to** con rm my ight.

Il faudrait qu'on soit à la gare à sept heures. **We ought to** be at the station at seven.

Il faudrait qu'on prenne plus de carburant. **We ought to** get some more petrol.

Another way of saying what you have to do is to use **je dois** (*I must*) followed by the infinitive.

I must...

Je dois aller chercher la voiture **I must** collect the car before avant trois heures. three.

Je dois prendre le bus à 5h30 **I must** catch the bus at 5.30 demain matin. tomorrow morning.

Vous devez présenter votre **You must** show your driving permis de conduire. licence.

Vous devez imprimer votre billet **You must** print out your eélectronique. ticket.

[Your Click Matters](#)

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

When you are using some kind of transport in France, you may well need to say what you would like to do in French. You can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) with the infinitive. This comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais louer un vélo.

I'd like to hire a bike.

Je voudrais prendre le train.

I'd like to take the train.

Mon ami voudrait signaler la **My friend would like to** report perte de ses bagages. his luggage missing.

The most direct way of saying what you want to do is using **je veux** (*I want*) or **je souhaite** (*I wish*) with the infinitive. **veux** is from the verb **vouloir** and **souhaite** is from the verb **souhaiter**. For more information on **vouloir** and **-er** verbs like **souhaiter**, see [pages 285](#) and [269](#).

I want to...

Je veux aller à Marseille.

I want to go to Marseilles.

Je veux descendre à Nancy.

I want to get off at Nancy.

On veut partir demain matin.

We want to leave tomorrow morning.

Je souhaite échanger mon billet.

I want to change my ticket.

Je ne souhaite pas voyager en première classe.

I don't want to travel first class.

If you want to say that you feel like doing something, say **j'ai envie de** (*I feel like*). This is slightly stronger than **j'ai bien envie de** (*I quite fancy*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

I feel like...

J'ai envie de passer par Annecy. **I feel like** going via Annecy.

J'ai envie de plusieurs fois. faire le voyage en **I feel like** breaking the journey.

On n'a pas envie de passer six **We don't feel like** spending six heures dans le train. hours on the train.

J'ai bien envie d'aller à Port-Vendres. **I quite fancy** going to Port-Vendres.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

We could...

On pourrait y aller demain. **We could** go there tomorrow.

On pourrait faire étape à Agen. **We could** break our journey at Agen.

On peut y aller à pied, **si tu préfères**. **We can** walk, **if you prefer**.

BON À SAVOIR!

If you want to ask someone what they think of a particular suggestion, use **Qu'est-ce que tu en dis?** or **Qu'est-ce que vous en dites?** (*What do you say?*).

I can... if you like

Je peux te déposer, **si tu veux.**

I can like. give you a lift, **if you**

Je peux te retrouver à l'aéroport, **si tu veux.** **I can** meet you at the airport, **if you like.**

On peut demander au contrôleur, **si vous voulez.**

We can ask the ticket inspector, **if you like.**

If you want to ask someone if they would like to do something, use **Tu veux...?**, or **Tu voudrais...?** (*Would you like...?*) if you know the person well or

Vous voulez...? if you're talking to several people.

These all come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#). **Would you like to...?**

Tu veux aller te baigner?

Would you like to go for a swim?

Tu veux te reposer un peu?

Would you like to have a little rest?

Est-ce que tu veux prendre le volant?

Would you like to drive?

Vous voulez y aller à pied?

Would you like to walk there?

Est-ce que vous voulez qu'on s'arrête ici?

Would you like to stop here?

Another way of making suggestions in French is to ask **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*), which is often shortened to **Pourquoi pas...?** in spoken French.

Why don't...?

Pourquoi ne pas louer une voiture? Why don't we hire a car?

Pourquoi ne pas prendre le métro? Why don't we metro? take the

Pourquoi pas demander au Why don't we ask the chau eur?
driver?

How about...?

Et si on prenait par la petite route? How about taking the B road? Et si on prenait le bateau pour y How about going there by aller? boat?

Et si on passait par Biarritz? How about going via Biarritz?

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you are travelling around in a French-speaking country or city, you will often need to find out some information to help you get to where you want to go. When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **excusez-moi** or **pardon**.

I'm looking for...

Excusez-moi, **je cherche** la gare Excuse me, **I'm looking for** the
maritime, s'il vous plaît. harbour station.

Excusez-moi, l'écomusée du Beaujolais, s'il vous **je cherche** Excuse me,

Beaujolais heritage centre. **I'm looking for** the plaît.

Pardon, le bureau des
réclamations, **s'il vous plaît?**

Excuse me, **I'm looking for** the
complaints office.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to say **merci** or **merci beaucoup** when you get the information. If someone hasn't been able to help you, you can still thank them by saying **merci quand même** (*thanks all the same*).

If you want to ask a general question in French, you can use **C'est...?** or **Est-ce que c'est...?** (*Is it...?*). **Is it...?**

Is there...?

C'est par là?

Is it this way?

C'est près d'ici?

Is it near here?

Est-ce que c'est loin, s'il vous plaît?

Is it far?

Est-ce que c'est le train pour
Angoulême?

Is this the train for
Angoulême?

Est-ce que c'est le bon arrêt pour le
musée, s'il vous plaît?

Is this the right stop for
the museum?

Est-ce que cette place **est** libre?

Is this seat free?

Il y a une station-service près d'ici, **Is there** a petrol station near
s'il vous plaît? here, please?

Il y a une station de métro près d'ici?

Is there an underground station near here?

Il y a des restaurants près d'ici?

Are there any restaurants around here?

Est-ce qu'il y a des tarifs étudiants?

Is there a discount for students?

BON À SAVOIR!

You can see that both *there is* and *there are* are **il y a** in French.

In order to get more specific information, you may want to ask, for example, **Où...?** (*Where...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*), or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

Where...?

Où est la consigne?

Where's the left-luggage office?

Où est la station de taxis la plus proche, s'il vous plaît?

Where's the nearest taxi rank, please?

Où sont les toilettes?

Where are the public toilets?

Which...?

Je dois prendre **quelle ligne**, s'il vous plaît?

Which line do I take, please?

Quels bus vont en centre-ville?

Which buses go to the town centre?

De quel quai part le train pour Sarlat?

Which platform does the train for Sarlat leave **from**?

Excusez-moi, **c'est quelle direction**
pour Brest, s'il vous plaît?

Excuse me, **which way** do I
go for Brest, please?

C'est quelle direction pour aller au Stade
de France, s'il vous plaît? **Which way is it** to the Stade
de France, please?

What time...?

On embarque à **quelle heure**?

What time are we boarding?

Le train part à **quelle heure**?

What time does the train
leave?

À **quelle heure** est-ce qu'on arrive
Bruxelles? **What time** do we get to à
Brussels?

Le départ **est bien** à sept heures?

The departure **is at** seven, **isn't**

Le bus **arrive bien** à neuf heures
doesn't it? The bus **arrives at** nine thirty, **isn't**

BON À SAVOIR!

When you're not sure about something, you can ask for confirmation by adding **bien** after the verb in your question.

If you want to ask how often something happens, how long it takes or how much it costs, you can use a phrase with **combien**.

How often...?

Il y a un bus pour Genève **tous les**
combien?

How often is there a bus for
Geneva?

Il y a un vol pour Londres **tous les combien?**

How often is there a flight to London?

Il faut faire le plein **tous les combien** de kilomètres?

How often do you have to fill up the tank?

How long...?

Ça prend combien de temps?

How long does it take?

Ça prend combien de temps pour aller à la gare?

How long does it take to get to the railway station?

Ça prend combien de temps

How long does it take to get

pour aller de Lille à Paris?

from Lille to Paris?

Le voyage **prend combien de temps?** **How long does the journey take?**

On va mettre combien de temps **How long will it take us** to get pour y aller? there?

How much is...?

Combien coûte un ticket pour Lyon?

How much is a ticket to Lyons?

Combien coûte le péage entre Paris **How much is** toll between Paris and the motorway et Orléans? Orléans?

Combien est-ce que ça coûte de **How much does it cost** to laisser une valise à la consigne? leave a case in left-luggage?

Combien est-ce que ça coûterait de louer une voiture pour deux jours?
How much would it cost to hire a car for two days?

Use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce qu'on peut...?** (*Can we...?*) to ask whether you can do something. These are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).
Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux le payer par carte **Can I** pay by debit card?

Est-ce que je peux pour la journée? louer une voiture **Can I** hire a car for the day?

Est-ce qu'on peut fumer dans le train? **Is** smoking **allowed** on the train?

Est-ce qu'on peut y aller à pied? **Can you** walk there?

Est-ce qu'il est possible de changer son billet par Internet? **Can you** change your ticket on the internet?

When asking for something, you can use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir un plan du métro, s'il vous plaît? **Can I have** a map of the underground, please?

Est-ce que je peux avoir une carte à la **Can I have** a weekly pass, semaine, s'il vous plaît? please?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir les **Could I have** a train horaires des trains, s'il vous plaît? timetable, please?

When you want to find out if something is available or if someone has something, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Have you got...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#). **Have you got...?**

Est-ce que horaires des bus? **vous avez** les **Have you got** any bus timetables?

Vous avez un plan d'accès, **Have you got** a map that shows s'il vous plaît? how to get there, please?

Vous avez petites en location? des voitures plus **Do you have** smaller cars to hire?

Est-ce qu'il vous reste places côté couloir? des **Have you got** any aisle seats **left?**

When you ask for something, you can simply name what you want, but make sure you finish your question with **s'il vous plaît**, or your request might sound rather like an order!

A..., please

[Your Click Matters](#)

Un aller simple, s'il vous plaît.

A single, please.

Une place côté fenêtre, s'il vous plaît. A window seat, please.

Trois billets retours pour Montréal, s'il Three returns to Montreal, vous plaît. please.

If you are asking someone if they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez nous emmener à l'hôtel Saint-Antoine, Saint-Antoine s'il vous plaît?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me prévenir quand on arrivera à l'arrêt du musée?

Vous pouvez me déposer ici, s'il vous plaît?

Vous pouvez nous montrer où ça se sur la carte?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de m'écrire l'adresse?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de à mon hôtel?

Can you tell me when we're near the museum stop?

Can you drop me here,

Can you take us to the hotel, please?
please?

Can you show us where it is on the map? **Would you mind...?**

Would you mind writing down the address for me?

Would you mind dropping me at my hotel?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de **Would you mind** showing us
nous montrer où c'est? where it is?

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

You will want to be able to discuss what you like and dislike with your French-speaking acquaintances. To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** (*I love*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*). These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [page 275](#).

I like...

J'aime bien ces routes de campagne. **I like these** country roads.

J'aime bien voyager en train. **I like** travelling by train.

J'aime beaucoup cette voiture. **I like** this car **a lot**.

J'aime l'avion. **I love** ying.

I don't like...

Je n'aime pas les voitures
automatiques. **I don't like** automatics.

Je n'aime pas conduire à droite. **I don't like** driving on the
right.

Do you like...?

Tu aimes bien cette région? **Do you like** this area?

Tu aimes bien voyager seul? **Do you like** travelling by
yourself?

Est-ce que vous aimez conduire de nuit?

Do you like driving at night?

Est-ce que vous aimez bien les voyages organisés?

Do you like package tours?

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*) or **je préférerais** (*I'd prefer*). These come from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page 270](#).

I prefer to...

Je préfère dormir à l'hôtel.

I prefer to sleep in a hotel.

Je préfère prendre l'autoroute.

I prefer to take the motorway.

Je préférerais ne pas laisser ma voiture ici. **I'd rather...**

I'd prefer not to leave my car here.

J'aimerais mieux faire le voyage par beau temps.

I'd rather make the journey in good weather.

J'aimerais mieux être assise côté **I'd rather** sit next to the fenêtre. window.

On aimerait mieux faire la route daytime.

We'd rather drive in the de jour.

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to be hear when you're travelling about.

Prochain arrêt:...	Next stop:...
Le train pour Nice part du quai numéro trois.	The train for Nice leaves from platform three.
Votre billet, s'il vous plaît.	Ticket, please.
Je peux m'asseoir ici?	Do you mind if I sit here?
Continuez tout droit jusqu'aux feux.	Go straight on till you get to the traffic lights.
Prenez la deuxième à gauche.	Take the second turning on the left.
C'est en face de la cathédrale.	It's opposite the cathedral.
C'est tout près.	It's very near.
On peut y aller à pied.	It's within walking distance.
C'est à trois arrêts d'ici.	It's three stops from here.

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- If you're behind the wheel of a car, be ready to produce your driving licence if asked for it by the police. If you've left it behind, you may well be needed. The police officer might ask you: **votre permis de conduire, s'il vous plaît** (*your driving licence, please*). French drivers also have to be able to produce their **carte grise** (*car registration document*) and their **attestation d'assurance** (*car insurance certificate*).

[Your Click Matters](#)

- Motorways are not free in France. When you go onto the motorway, you get a **ticket de péage** or **ticket d'entrée**. When you come off the motorway this will show how many kilometres you've driven and how much you have to pay.
- At motorway tolls, some toll booths are manned, some are automatic (using bank cards), and some are reserved for drivers using the **télépéage** system which makes it possible to pay the toll via a sensor inside the car (with monthly bills sent to your address). It is best to stay clear of these lanes which are marked with a yellow "T" sign, as the drivers equipped with such sensors don't take kindly to tourists holding up their fast lane!
- Over the past years, **covoiturage** (*car sharing*) has become quite popular in France. It can be a cheap and convenient way of getting around, especially for short distances. There are many places where you can find others for **covoiturage**, but local papers, and ad boards in shops are probably your best bet.
- If you're asked to produce your **titre de transport** on the bus, the train or the underground, it means that you have to show your ticket to the inspector.
- Make sure you punch your ticket before you get on the train. If you have forgotten to do so, it is advisable to go and see **le contrôleur** (*the ticket inspector*) as soon as possible or you might be fined.

- If you're in a hurry, you can hop on the train and buy a ticket for a small amount extra directly from a ticket inspector - go and see him or her as soon as you're on the train or you might be suspected of **resquillage** (*fare-dodging*).
- Queues tend to be informal in French-speaking countries. So if you're trying to get to an information desk and don't know if it's your turn, just ask **C'est à moi?** or **C'est mon tour?** (*Am I next?*). If you want to let someone in before you, you can say **après vous** (*after you*).

Giftbooks4u.com



[Your Click Matters](#)

If you're going to stay in a French-speaking country, the phrases in this unit will provide you with the language you need to help you find the sort of accommodation you want (hotel, hostel, self-catering accommodation or a flat to rent) and ensure that everything is to your satisfaction when you're there. We'll also give you a few tips on what the receptionist or your landlord or landlady may say to you.

ASKING FOR THINGS

To say what kind of accommodation you want in French, use **je voudrais** or **je souhaite** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir** and **souhaite** comes from the verb **souhaiter**. For further information on **vouloir** and **-er** verbs like **souhaiter**,

see [pages 285](#) and [269](#).

I'd like...

Je voudrais une chambre avec un balcon.

Je voudrais réserver une chambre double pour deux nuits.

On voudrait un dortoir de six personnes.

Je souhaite rester trois nuits.

I'd like to book a double room for two nights.

We'd like a six-bed dorm.

I'd like to stay three nights.

I'd like a room with a balcony.

Je souhaite louer votre gîte pendant **I'd like to** book your gîte for deux semaines. two weeks.

je veux is a slightly more direct way of saying what you want.

I want...

Je veux un appartement bien éclairé. **I want** a well-lit at.

Je veux changer de chambre; celle **I want to** change rooms; the que vous m'avez donnée est humide. one you gave me is damp. **Je veux qu'on** me rembourse. **I want** a refund.

On ne veut pas de chambre côté rue. **We don't want** overlooking the road. a room

Use **je tiens à** to say that you insist on something. **tiens** comes from the verb **tenir**.

I insist on...

Je tiens vraiment à avoir vue **I absolutely insist on** having a view sur la mer. of the sea.

Je tiens à ne pas être dérangé. **I insist on** not being disturbed.

On tient à être dans le centre- **We insist on** staying in the centre ville. of town.

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*) or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Would you have...?*). These come from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

Do you have...?

Est-ce que vous avez des informations sur le logement? **Do you have** any information about accommodation?

Est-ce que vous avez des chambres de libre? **Have you got** any rooms free?

Vous avez Internet? **Have you got** internet access?

Est-ce que vous auriez des serviettes, s'il vous plaît? **Would you have** any towels, please?

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir la clé de ma chambre, s'il vous plaît? **Can I have** the key to my room, please?

Est-ce que je peux avoir un reçu, s'il vous plaît? **Can I have** a receipt, please?

Est-ce qu'on peut avoir une liste des logements disponibles? **Can we have** a list of available accommodation? **Est-ce que je pourrais avoir** deux serviettes en plus? **Could I have** two more towels?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, use **Est-ce que pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) and **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). They both come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me confirmer la réservation par e-mail? **Can you** confirm the booking by email?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que vous pouvez m'appeler **Can you** give me an alarm pour me réveiller à sept heures, s'il call at seven o'clock,

vous plaît?

please?

Est-ce que vous pourriez changer les **Could you** change the serviettes, s'il vous plaît? towels, please?

Vous pourriez me montrer la chambre, **Could you** show me the

s'il vous plaît?

room, please?

Would you mind...?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de me montrer comment marche la cuisinière?

Would you mind showing me how the cooker works?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de m'appeler un taxi?

Would you mind calling a taxi for me?

Ça vous dérangerait de monter my room?

Would you mind taking my suitcases up to mes valises à ma chambre?

TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF

When you are enquiring about somewhere to stay you will need to give information about yourself. Use **je suis** (*I am*) to talk about yourself and **on est** (*we are*) to include the people who are with you. These come from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [page 282](#).

I'm...

Je suis étudiante.

I'm a student.

Je suis canadien.

I'm Canadian.

Je suis du sud de l'Angleterre. **I'm** from the south of England.

On est en vacances. **We're** on holiday.

Nous sommes les propriétaires. **We're** the owners.

My name is...

Je m'appelle Brian Gallagher. **My name is** Brian Gallagher. **Je m'appelle** Olivia Gauthier. **My name is** Olivia Gauthier. **Je m'appelle** Madame Smith. J'ai **My name is** Mrs Smith. J've réservé une chambre double pour booked a double room for cette nuit. tonight.

Mon nom de famille c'est Morris... **My surname is** Morris...

...et **mon prénom c'est** Emma. ...and Emma. **my first name is** Ça

s'écrit M-O-R-R-I-S. **It's spelt** M-O-R-R-I-S.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that the French alphabet is pronounced differently from the English alphabet. For more information on how to say letters of the alphabet in French, see [page 203](#).

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you want to obtain some information about your accommodation, an easy way to ask questions is just to put **est-ce que** before what you want to know. Alternatively, you can simply make your voice go up at the end of the sentence. This sounds more informal than using **est-ce que**.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Is it...?

Est-ce que c'est cher?

Is it expensive?

Est-ce que c'est un hôtel moderne?

Is it a modern hotel?

C'est loin?

Is it far?

Le petit déjeuner **est** inclus dans le prix? **Is** the price? breakfast included
in

Est-ce que toutes les charges **sont** **Are** all the bills included comprises
dans le loyer? in the rent?

You can use **Il y a...?** in French to ask both *Is there...?*
or *Are there...?*.

Is there...?

Est-ce qu'il y a un endroit où
manger près d'ici?

Est-ce qu'il y a un
interphone?

Is there an intercom?

**Is
there**

Est-ce qu'il y a vue sur la mer?

Is there a sea view?

Est-ce qu'il y a le chau age
central dans l'appartement?

Is there central heating in the
apartment?

anywhere near here where
we can get something to eat?

Il y a des toilettes handicapés? **Are there** any disabled toilets?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Use **je cherche** (*I'm looking for*) or **on cherche** (*we're looking for*) to ask where something is. **cherche** comes from the verb **chercher**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **chercher**, see [page 269](#).

I'm looking for...

Excusez-moi, **je cherche** le camping.

Excuse me, **I'm looking for** the campsite.

Je cherche une chambre d'hôte pour ce soir.

I'm looking for a B&B for tonight.

On cherche l'hôtel du Nord.

We're looking for the hôtel du Nord.

To get more specific information you may need to ask **Quel...?** (*What...?*), **Où...?** (*Where...?*) or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

What...?

Quel est le nom de l'hôtel? **What's** the name of the hotel? **Quel** est le numéro de l'agence **What's** the number for the immobilière? letting agency?

Quelle est l'adresse du **What's** the address of the propriétaire? landlord?

Quels sont vos tarifs?

What are your rates?

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to use **quel** with a masculine word and **quelle** with a feminine word.

Where...?

Où est le bar?

Where's the bar?

Où est la salle de tness?

Where's the gym?

Où sont les ascenseurs?

Where are the lifts?

Où est-ce que je peux brancher mon portable?

Where can I plug in my laptop?

What time...?

À quelle heure est le dîner?

What time's dinner?

À quelle heure vous fermez les portes le soir?

What time do you lock the doors at night?

Il faut libérer la chambre **avant quelle heure?**

What time do we have to vacate the room **by?**

Vous servez le petit déjeuner **jusqu'à quelle heure?**

What time do you serve breakfast **till?**

You are very likely to want to ask how much something costs. To do this, use a phrase containing **combien**.

How much...?

C'est combien pour une nuit en double? per night?

How much is a double room chambre

C'est combien pour complète? **much is** full board?

la pension

How

Combien ça coûterait de louer un **How much would it be** to rent gîte pour tout le mois de juillet? a gîte for the whole of July?

How many...?

Il vous reste **combien de** chambres **How many** en-suite rooms avec salle de bains? have you got left?

Il y a **combien de** lits dans la **How many** beds are there in chambre familiale? the family room?

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

Often when you are staying in a hotel or other accommodation you will need to be able to ask whether you can do something or not. Use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que nous pouvons...?** (*Can we...?*) to ask if you can do something. These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux voir la chambre?

Can I see the room?

Est-ce que je peux laisser mes valises ici cinq minutes?

Can I leave my suitcases here for five minutes?

Est-ce que je peux fumer dans la chambre?

Can I smoke in the room?

Est-ce qu'on peut utiliser la piscine?

Can we use the pool?

Est-ce qu'on peut camper ici? **Do you mind if...?**

Can we camp here?

Ça vous dérange si je gare ma voiture dehors un instant?

Do you mind if I park my car outside for a moment?

Ça vous dérange si je paye par
carte de crédit?

Do you mind if I pay by credit
card?

Ça te dérange si on prend la chambre du
haut? upstairs bedroom?

If you want to ask someone if you may do something, use **Vous permettez que...?** (*Am I allowed to...?*) followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Am I allowed to...?

Vous permettez que je reçoive des invités?
Am I allowed to have invited?
guests?

Vous permettez que je me serve de la
machine à laver? Am I allowed to use the la
washing machine?

Vous permettez qu'on utilise le téléphone?
use the phone? May we

On a le droit de se servir du barbecue?
Are we allowed to use the barbecue?
barbecue?

On a le droit d'emmener notre chien?
Are we allowed to bring our chien?
dog?

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When talking about what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*).

These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [page 275](#).

I like...

J'aime bien les petits hôtels.

I like small hotels.

J'aime bien les campings de montagnes. **I like** campsites in the mountains.

J'adore cette pension de famille.

I love this guest house.

I don't like...

Je n'aime pas cet hôtel.

I don't like this hotel.

On n'aime pas tout prévoir à l'avance. **We don't like** to plan everything in advance.

Je déteste cette décoration.

I hate this decor.

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*) or **je préférerais** (*I'd prefer*). To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. These come from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page 270](#).

I prefer...

Je préfère cet hôtel.

I prefer this hotel.

Je préfère loger chez l'habitant.

I prefer to stay with a family.

Je préférerais ne pas attendre pour réserver un hôtel.

I'd prefer not to wait to book a hotel.

On préfère l'auberge de jeunesse au camping.

We prefer youth hostels to campsites.

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux être dans le centre **I'd rather** be in the town ville.
centre.

J'aimerais mieux être en colocation
que de vivre seul.

I'd rather share a at **than**
live on my own.

On aimerait mieux vivre à la campagne
que d'avoir un appartement en ville.

We'd prefer to live in the
country **than** have a at in
town.

EXPRESSING OPINIONS

You may well be asked what you think of your accommodation. Whether it's perfect or not up to scratch, you can use **je trouve** to say what you think. This comes from the verb **trouver**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **trouver**, see [page 269](#).

I think...

Je trouve petite. la chambre un peu

I think the bedroom's a bit small.

Je trouve la maison très
welcoming.

I think the house is very accueillante.

J'ai trouvé le service excellent. **I thought** excellent. the service was

Je trouve qu'il y a trop de bruit **I find that** there's too much noise la nuit.
at night.

In my opinion...

À mon avis, c'est trop cher pour ce que c'est.

In my opinion, it's too expensive for what it is.

À mon avis, c'est parfait pour ce a besoin. our needs.

In my opinion, it's perfect for dont on

À mon avis, la chambre est trop small.

In my opinion, the room is too petite.

À mon avis, c'est complètement inacceptable. inacceptable.

In my view, it's completely

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

If you would like to suggest that you do something, use **je peux** (*I can*) followed by the infinitive and **si vous voulez** (*if you like*) – or **si tu veux** for a person you know well – at the end. **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

I can... if you like.

Je peux confirmer les dates **I can** confirm the dates demain, **si vous voulez.** tomorrow, **if you like.**

Je peux vous envoyer un acompte, **I can** send you a deposit, **if si vous voulez.** you like.

On peut chercher un autre hôtel, **si We can** look for another hotel, **tu veux.** if you like.

If you wish to ask what someone would like you to do, you can use **Vous voulez que je...?** (*Would you like me to...?*) followed by a verb in the subjunctive, which you can find out more about on [page 274](#).

Would you like me to...?

Vous voulez que je vous paye en cash? **Would you like me to pay liquide?**

Vous voulez que je vous montre ma réservation? **Would you like me to show you my booking?**

Tu veux que je prenne le lit du haut? **Would you like me to take the top bunk?**

Est-ce que vous voulez qu'on vous laisse nos passeports? **Would you like to keep our passports?**

ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS

You may want to ask for advice or a recommendation concerning your accommodation. To ask for advice, use **Est-ce que vous me conseillez de...?** (*Would you advise...?*). This comes from the verb **conseiller**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see

[page 269](#).

Would you advise...?

Est-ce que vous nous conseillez d'amener des sacs de couchage?

Would you advise us to bring sleeping bags?

Vous me conseillez d'amener de quoi manger?

Would you advise me to bring something to eat?

Would you recommend...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que vous recommandez cet hôtel?

Would you recommend this hotel?

Est-ce que vous me conseillez de réserver à l'avance?

Would you advise me to book in advance?

Est-ce que vous recommandez cette agence immobilière?

Would you recommend this estate agency?

Est-ce que vous nous recommandez de louer à la semaine? **Would you recommend that we rent by the week?**

Vous nous recommandez de prendre un appartement en ville? **Would you recommend us to take a flat in town?**

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

If you want to say that you have to do something with regard to your accommodation in French, you use **il faut que je** (*I have to*) or **il faudrait que je** (*I ought to*) and then the verb in the subjunctive, which you can find out about on [page 274](#).

I have to...

Il faut que je passe à la réception pour payer.

I have to go to the reception to pay.

Il faut que je note l'adresse de l'hôtel.

I have to write down the address of the hotel.

Il faut qu'on parte à six heures
demain matin.

We have to leave at six
tomorrow morning.

I ought to...

Il faudrait que je fasse une lessive. **I ought to** washing. do a load of

Il faudrait que je voiture. décharge la **I ought to** unload the car.

Il faudrait qu'on se lève avant sept **We ought to** be up by seven heures.
am.

Il faudrait qu'on ait le double des **We ought to** have a spare set clefs. of
keys.

Alternatively, you can use **je dois** (*I must*), from the verb
devoir. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

I must...

Je dois me lever tôt demain.

I must get up early tomorrow.

Je dois rendre les clés au
owner.

I must give the keys back to the propriétaire.

On doit logement avant la n du mois. absolument trouver un

We accommodation by the end of the month. absolutely **must** nd

In French you can tell somebody what you need by using **j'ai**
besoin de (*I need*).

[Your Click Matters](#)

I need...

J'ai besoin d'un lit d'enfant.

I need a cot.

J'ai besoin de téléphoner en Écosse.

I need to call Scotland.

Nous avons besoin d'une chambre au rez-de-chaussée.

We need a room on the ground floor.

You can use **Est-ce qu'il faut que...?** (*Do I have to...?*) followed by the verb in the subjunctive to ask about what you have to do. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Do I have to...?

Est-ce qu'il faut que je laisse la clé à la réception quand je sors?

Do I have to leave the key at the reception when I go out?

Est-ce qu'il faut qu'on emmène des sacs de couchage?

Do we need to bring sleeping bags?

Est-ce qu'il faut vous prévenir quand on quitte l'hôtel?

Do we have to let you know when we leave the hotel?

Qu'est-ce qu'il faut que j'emmène?

What do I need to bring?

Quand est-ce qu'il faut qu'on libère la chambre?

When do we have to vacate the room?

Alternatively, you can use **Est-ce que je dois...?** (*Do I need to...?*) **Do I need to...?**

Est-ce que je dois faire le ménage dans l'appartement avant de partir?

Do I need to clean the apartment before leaving?

Est-ce que je dois réserver?

Do I need to book?

Est-ce qu'on doit laisser un pourboire **Do we need to** leave a tip à la femme de chambre? for the housekeeper?

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

When you are talking about your plans for where you're going to stay, in French, as in English, the present tense is very often used to talk about things that have been arranged and are definite. For more on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

I'm staying...

Je loge en auberge de jeunesse la **I'm staying** in a youth hostel première semaine. the first week.

Je loge chez l'habitant le premier **I'm staying** with a host family soir. the first night.

... ensuite **je dors** à l'hôtel. ... then **I'm staying** in a hotel.

Alternatively, you can use the future tense in French, as in English.

I'll...

Je serai à l'hôtel à dix-sept heures. **I'll be** at the hotel at 5 pm.

Je paierai le loyer à l'avance. **I'll pay** the rent in advance. **On arrivera** dans la soirée. **We'll arrive** in the evening.

In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, put **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*)

before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

I'm going to...

Je vais loger à Biarritz.

I'm going to stay in Biarritz.

Je vais louer un chalet à la montagne. **I'm going to** rent a chalet in the mountains.

On va faire du camping.

We're going to camp.

If you want to say that you intend to do something, you can use **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte** (*I intend to*).

I intend to...

J'ai l'intention de louer un appartement.
a at.

I intend to rent

J'ai l'intention de trouver un

I intend to find a gîte.

Je compte rester jusqu'à vendredi. **I intend to** stay until Friday. **On compte** partir demain après le petit déjeuner. **We intend to** leave after breakfast tomorrow.

COMPLAINING

Unfortunately the service you get in your accommodation may not always be perfect. A very simple way of complaining is to say what the problem is using **il y a**, which

means both *there is* and *there are* or **il n'y a pas de** which means *there isn't* or *there aren't*.

There's...

Il y a trop de bruit.

There's too much noise.

Il y a une fuite au plafond.

There's a leak in the ceiling.

Il y a des cafards dans l'appartement.

There are cockroaches in the apartment.

There isn't...

Il n'y a pas d'eau chaude.

There isn't any hot water.

Il n'y a pas de serviettes propres dans la chambre.

There aren't any clean towels in the room.

La chambre **n'a pas de** balcon.

The room **doesn't have** a balcony.

L'appartement **n'a pas** la climatisation.

The apartment **doesn't have** air-conditioning.

You can also use the verb **être** (*to be*) to describe what the problem is.

It's...

L'appartement **est** sale.

The apartment's dirty.

L'eau de la piscine **n'est pas** très propre.

The water in the swimming pool **isn't** very clean.

Cet hôtel **est** trop bruyant.

This hotel's too noisy.

Il fait trop chaud ici.

It's too hot in here.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that in French to talk about the weather, you use the verb **faire**. For more information on this use of **faire**, see [page 267](#).

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some phrases you are likely to hear when you're looking for somewhere to stay.

Vous cherchez quel type de logement? What type of accommodation are you looking for?

La réservation est à quel nom? Whose name is the booking in?

Pour combien de nuits? For how many nights?

Pour combien de personnes? For how many people?

Le petit déjeuner est inclus dans le prix. Breakfast is included in the price.

Je peux voir votre passeport, s'il vous plaît? Can I see your passport, please?

Nous sommes complets. We're full.

Il y a une caution de 300 euros. There's a 300 euro deposit.

Vous êtes joignable à quel numéro? What number can we contact you on?

Les chiens ne sont pas admis. We don't allow dogs.

Vous voulez régler comment? How would you like to pay?

Remplissez ce formulaire, s'il vous plaît.

Please fill in this form.

Signez ici, s'il vous plaît.

Please sign here.

Vous pouvez épeler votre nom, Can you spell your name for me, s'il vous plaît? please?

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- The proportion of **propriétaires** (*homeowners*) in France is much lower than it is in Britain. People tend to rent a lot more. Long-term rented accommodation is usually unfurnished; **locataires** (*tenants*) often even have to supply their own **appareils ménagers** (*white goods*) and **meubles de cuisine** (*kitchen units*).
- It is not as common for professionals to share a flat – **être en colocation** – in France as it is in Britain, although high rents have changed this over the past few years, especially in cities.
- If you're flat-hunting in France, you will hear flats described as **F1**, **F2**, **F3** and so on. These refer to the number of rooms in a flat, not including the bathroom and kitchen. An **F1** is a studio, an **F2** is a one-bedroom flat, and so on.
- One good way of getting to know an area and its locals is to stay in a **gîte rural** – a cottage or apartment in the country. Some offer self-catering facilities, but others give you the chance to stay in an apartment within the house of the host family.

[Your Click Matters](#)

- The equivalent of B&Bs in French rural areas are **chambres d'hôte**, usually a room in a farmhouse. Some of these places also offer **table d'hôte**, which means that they will provide a meal using local produce, or even food grown on the farm. If there aren't any vacancies you will see a "**Complet**" ("*Full*") sign.
- When staying in a **camping** (*campsite*), you will have to pay **des arrhes** (*a deposit*) which is part of the full amount you will pay at the end of your stay. When renting accommodation you may also have to pay **une caution** (*a security deposit*).

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Bon appétit!** – Enjoy your meal!

If you're going out for a meal in France either in a local café or in a fancy restaurant, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to talk to the waiter and chat with your French friends in easy, natural French. We'll also give you some tips on getting advice about what to order, and a few key phrases the waiters are likely to use.

MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

[Your Click Matters](#)

If you want to make arrangements such as where and when to meet when you go out for a meal with Frenchspeaking people, you can ask **Où est-ce que...?** (*Where...?*) or **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

Where...?

Où est-ce qu'on se retrouve?

Where shall we meet?

Où est-ce que tu veux que je vienne te prendre?

Where do you want me to pick you up?

Où est-ce qu'on pourrait aller manger?

Where shall we go to eat?

What time...?

À quelle heure est-ce qu'on se retrouve?

What time shall we meet?

À quelle heure est-ce qu'elle va arriver?

What time is she going to get here?

Tu as réservé une table **pourquelle heure?**

What time did you book the table **for?**

Vous servez **jusqu'à quelle heure?**

What time do you serve **till?**

On peut arriver **à partir de quelleheure?**

How early can we come?

If you want to check that the arrangements suit your friends or colleagues, you can use **Ça te va si...?** or **Ça vous va si...?** (*Will it be all right if...?*).

Will it be all right if...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Ça te va si on va au restaurant demain soir? **Will it be all right if we go to the restaurant tomorrow night?**

Ça te va si on se retrouve à sept heures? **Will it be all right if we meet up at seven pm?**

Ça vous va si on vous rejoint là-bas? **Will it be all right if we meet you there?**

Is it better to...?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux réserver?

Is it better to book?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux arriver en avance?

Is it better to arrive early?

Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux changer notre réservation?

Would it be better to change our reservation?

Est-ce que ça t'irait mieux samedi soir?

Would Saturday evening suit you better?

It would suit me best to...

Ça m'arrangerait de vous retrouver sur place.

It'd suit me best to meet you there.

Ça m'arrangerait d'y aller à huit heures.

It'd suit me best to be there for eight.

Ça nous arrangerait d'y aller en voiture.

It'd be better for us to go there by car.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're going out for a meal you'll need to ask for various pieces of information, such as where things are and how much they cost. To ask where something is, you can

use **Où se trouve...?** (*Where is...?*), and to ask how much it costs, use **C'est combien...?** (*How much is...?*).

Where's...?

Où se trouve le restaurant?

Where is the restaurant?

Où se trouve la salle non-fumeurs?

Where's the non-smoking section?

Excusez-moi, **où se trouvent** les toilettes?

Excuse me, **where are** the toilets?

How much...?

C'est combien une bouteille de blanc du pays?

How much is a bottle of local white wine?

C'est combien une petite salade?

How much is it for a side salad?

Il est à combien, le menu?

How much is the set menu?

What...?

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a comme dessert?

What is there for dessert?

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a dans le cassoulet?

What is in a "cassoulet"? **Qu'est-**

ce qu'il y a comme garniture?

What does it come with?

Many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence – this will make you sound more informal. **Is it...?**

Est-ce que c'est un plat typique de la région?

Is it a local dish?

Est-ce que c'est compris dans le menu à 15 euros?

Is it included in the €15 set menu?

Est-ce qu'il est cher, ce restaurant?

Is it an expensive restaurant?

Ça convient aux végétariens?

Is it ok for vegetarians?

ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're out in a French restaurant you will need to be able to ask for what you want. If you want to ask for something in French, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) or **on voudrait** (*we'd like*). **voudrais** and **voudrait** come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like...

Je voudrais du pain, s'il vous plaît. **I'd like** some bread, please. **Je voudrais** une carafe d'eau, s'il vous **I'd like** a jug of water, please. please.

On voudrait une autre bouteille de **We'd like** another bottle of wine. wine.

Une table pour deux personnes, **vous plaît**.
two, **please**.

s'il A table for

BON À SAVOIR!

When the waiter approaches and you want to say that you're not ready to order, use **je n'ai pas encore décidé**.

Alternatively, if your order has already been taken, you can say **on a déjà commandé, merci** (*someone's already taken our order, thanks*).

I'll have...

Comme entrée, **je vais prendre** la terrine de lapin.

As a starter, **I'll have** the rabbit terrine.

Comme plat principal, **je vais prendre** le saumon.

For the main course, **I'll have** salmon.

Je vais prendre la mousse au chocolat comme dessert.

For dessert, **I'll have** the chocolate mousse.

Comme boisson, **nous allons prendre** une bouteille d'eau pétillante.

We'll have sparkling water to drink.

Je ne sais pas quoi **prendre**.

I don't know what **to have**.

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Have you got...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

Have you got...?

Est-ce que vous avez un menu enfants?

Have you got a children's menu?

Est-ce que vous avez une table en terrasse?

Do you have a table outside?

Vous avez une carte des vins?

Do you have a wine list?

Vous avez une chaise pour bébé?

Have you got a high chair?

If you want to ask someone, for example the waiter, for something in French, use **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have ...?*) or **Je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have ...?*). **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I have...?

Je peux avoir une autre fourchette, s'il plaît? **Can I have** another fork, vous please?

Je peux avoir la carte des desserts, s'il plaît? **Can I have** the dessert vous menu, please?

On peut avoir du pain, s'il vous plaît? **Can we have** bread, please? some

Je pourrais avoir l'addition, s'il vous plaît? **Could I have** the bill, please?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir de la moutarde, s'il vous plaît? **Could I have** some mustard, please?

If you want to ask someone such as a friend or a close colleague to do something for you, use **Tu pourrais...?** (*Could you ...?*). When you're talking to the waiter, use **Vous pourriez...?** instead. **pourrais** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Could you...?

Tu pourrais me passer le sel, s'il te plaît? **Could you** pass me the salt, please?

Tu pourrais me donner du pain, s'il te plaît? **Could you** give me some

Vous pourriez prendre notre commande, s'il vous plaît?

Could you take our order, please?

Est-ce que vous pourriez nous
apporter notre café, s'il vous plaît?

Could you bring us our
coffee, please?

Est-ce que vous pourriez revenir dans
cinq minutes?

Could you possibly come
back in five minutes?

Would you mind...?

Est-ce que ça vous ennuerait de ne
pas fumer?

Would you mind not
smoking?

Est-ce que ça vous ennuerait de
fermer la fenêtre?

Would you mind closing
the window?

plaît?

bread, please?

Est-ce que ça t'ennuerait de
changer de place avec moi?

Would you mind swapping
seats with me?

If you want to say what you'd like to do when you're eating out, use either **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*) followed by the infinitive. They come from the verbs **vouloir** and **aimer**. For more information on **vouloir** and **aimer**, see [pages 285](#) and [275](#).

I'd like to...

J'aimerais commander, s'il vous plaît. **I'd like to** order, please.

J'aimerais voir la carte des desserts.

I'd like to see the dessert
menu.

Je voudrais réserver une table, s'il
vous plaît.

I'd like to book a table,
please.

Nous voudrions commander du vin, s'il
vous plaît.

We'd like to order some
wine, please.

Nous aimerions payer par carte.

We'd like to pay by card.

You can also say what you feel like doing in French, by using **j'ai envie de** (*I feel like*) with the infinitive.

I feel like...

J'ai envie de prendre la fondue **I feel like** having the cheese savoyarde.
fondue.

J'ai envie de manger chinois, **I feel like** having Chinese food pour changer.
for a change.

Je n'ai pas envie de entrée.
a starter.

prendre **I don't feel like**

Tu as envie de goûter ma glace? **Would you like** cream? to try my ice
SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When you're out wining and dining you will probably want to talk about what you like or dislike, especially when it comes to food. To say what you like, you can use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). If you want to say that you don't like something, you can use **je n'aime pas**.

I like...

J'aime bien le fromage.

I like cheese.

J'aime bien les asperges.

I like asparagus.

J'adore les fruits de mer.

I love seafood.

Tu aimes les artichauts?

Do you like artichokes?

Vous aimez la cuisine thaïlandaise? **I don't like...**

Do you like Thai food?

Je n'aime pas les olives.

I don't like olives.

Je n'aime pas trop la cuisine mexicaine.

I'm not too keen on Mexican food.

J'ai horreur des abats.

I can't stand o al.

Tu n'aimes pas les champignons?

Don't you like mushrooms?

BON À SAVOIR!

In French when you talk about things that you like in general, you need to say **j'aime bien le fromage** (*I like the cheese*), **je n'aime pas les olives** (*I don't like the olives*) instead of *I like cheese, I don't like olives*.

I'd rather...

Je préfèred'ici. goûter un plat typique

I'd rather try a local dish.

Je préfère qu'on partage l'addition. **I'd rather** we split the bill. **Je préfère** prendre une entrée **plutôt I'd rather** have a starter **qu'un dessert. than** a dessert.

Est-ce que tu préférerais aller somewhere else?

Would you rather go ailleurs?

If you have special dietary needs, you can bring these into the conversation by using **je suis** (*I'm*).

I'm...

Je suis allergique aux œufs.

I'm allergic to eggs.

Je suis végétarien.

I'm a vegetarian.

ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS

If you want to ask the waiter or other people at your table to recommend something, you can use **Qu'est-ce que vous me conseillez?** or **Qu'est-ce que tu me conseilles?** (*What do you recommend?*).

What do you recommend...?

Qu'est-ce que vous me conseillez What do you recommend comme entrée as a starter?

Qu'est-ce que vous nous conseillez Which wine do you recommend? comme vin?

Qu'est-ce que tu me conseilles de prendre?

What would you recommend me to have?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me Can you recommend a recommander un plat de la région? local dish?

If you want to ask whether you should do something, use **Tu crois que je devrais...?** or **Vous croyez que je devrais...?** (*Do you think I should...?*).

Do you think I should...?

Tu crois que je devrais prendre la tart? **Do you think I should** have tarte the tart?

Tu crois que je devrais goûter les escargots?snails? **Do you think I should** try the

Vous croyez que je devrais **Do you think I should** have prendre du vin rouge avec ce plat? red wine with this dish?

Tu crois qu'on devrait laisser un **Do you think we should** pourboire? leave a tip?

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

We could...

On pourrait se mettre ici.

We could sit here.

On pourrait juste prendre une

We could just have a salad. *salade.*

On pourrait se mettre dehors, si vous voulez. **prefer.**

We could sit outside, if you **vous**

If you want to make a suggestion using *let's*, you can use the **nous** form of the imperative in French. For more information on the imperative, see [page 273](#).

Let's...

Asseyons-nous dehors.

Let's sit outside.

Prenons la fondue.

Let's have the fondue.

Ne prenons pas d'entrée.

Let's not bother with a starter.

If you are asking someone whether they feel like having or doing something, use **Ça te dit de...?** (*Do you fancy...?*).

Do you fancy...?

Ça te dit de prendre un café?

Do you fancy a coffee?

Ça te dit de goûter ma soupe? Elle **Do you fancy** trying my soup? est délicateuse. It's delicious.

Ça vous dit de prendre un dessert? **Do you fancy** some dessert? **Ça vous dit de** commander une **Do you fancy** ordering a deuxième bouteille? second bottle?

You can have...

Prends une entrée, si tu veux.

You can have a starter, if you like.

Prenez un digestif, si vous **You can have** a liqueur, if you voulez. like.

Prenez le menu à 20 €, si vous **You can have** the €20 set menu, if préférez. you like.

Another very simple way of making suggestions is to ask a question starting with **on** and followed by a verb in the present tense. This is a fairly informal way of making a suggestion. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

How about...?

On prend un apéritif?

How about having a drink first?

On commande une autre bouteille? **How about** we order another bottle?

On demande l'addition?

How about asking for the bill?

LISTEN OUT FOR

[Your Click Matters](#)

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you're eating out.

Tu veux que je vienne te prendre? Do you want me to pick you up?

Tu es libre samedi? Are you busy on Saturday?

Vous avez réservé? Have you got a reservation?

Je suis désolé, nous sommes complets. Sorry, we're full.

Par ici, s'il vous plaît. This way please.

Suivez-moi, s'il vous plaît. Follow me please.

Voici la carte des vins. Here's the wine list.

Le plat du jour est écrit au tableau. Today's special is on the board.

Je vous recommande la *tarte tatin*. I'd recommend the *tarte tatin*.

C'est une spécialité de la région. It's a local speciality.

Vous avez choisi? Are you ready to order?

Désirez-vous un apéritif? Would you like a drink rst?

Et comme boisson? What will you have to drink?

Désirez-vous du fromage ou un dessert? Would you like the cheese board or a dessert?

Vous désirez autre chose? Would you like anything else?

Je suis à vous dans un instant. I'll be right with you.

Je vous l'apporte tout de suite. I'll bring it right away.

C'est moi qui vous invite. It's on me.

C'est offert par la maison. . . . This is on the house. Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- To attract the waiter's attention, you just need to say **s'il vous plaît?** or **monsieur/mademoiselle/madame, s'il vous plaît?**. The word **Garçon!** that most people will have learnt at school is old-fashioned, and isn't used by French people much anymore.
- You'll always be served **du pain** (*bread*) with your meal, and you won't be charged for it. Most French people wouldn't contemplate having a meal without bread.
- While service charges are usually included on restaurant bills, it is still very common to leave **un pourboire** (*a tip*) of between five and ten per cent in a restaurant, especially if the service has been good. In bars, people tend to leave a few cents (**centimes d'euros**) in small change when buying drinks.
- Children are welcome in French restaurants, even in the evening. If you need a high chair, you can ask **Est-ce que vous avez une chaise pour bébé?**. Many restaurants will have **un menu enfant** (*a children's menu*).
- When serving you your food waiters will often say **Bon appétit!** (*Enjoy your meal!*) at the start of the meal, and sometimes **Bonne**

[Your Click Matters](#)

continuation! when bringing the second course. You should reply **Merci!** If people you are eating with or other diners in the restaurant say this to you, the correct response is: **Merci, vous aussi!** (*The same to you!*).

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Amusez-vous bien!** – Enjoy yourselves!

This unit will help you to feel confident in all kinds of social situations in French. Whether you are going to a concert, the theatre or cinema, going to watch a sports match, going to a bar, or throwing or being invited to a party, these phrases will ensure that your French sounds natural.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

When you're planning to go out with French-speaking friends or colleagues you may want to suggest what you could do. One good way of making a suggestion is to use **on**

[Your Click Matters](#)

peut (*we can*) or **on pourrait** (*we could*). These are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

We can...

On peut aller boire un verre, **si tu veux** **We can** go and have a drink, **if you like.**

On peut aller au théâtre, **si vous aimez** **We can** go to the theatre, **if you like.**

On pourrait aller à un concert, **si tu veux** **We could** go to a concert, **if you like.**

Another way of making a suggestion is by using **on va** (*let's*) followed by the infinitive.

Let's...

On va prendre un verre? **Let's** go out for a drink.

On va voir si on peut avoir des billets **Let's** see if we can get tickets **pour le match de samedi?** for the match on Saturday.

On va s'asseoir? **Shall we** go and sit down?

On commande une autre bouteille **Let's** order another bottle of wine? **de vin?**

You can also ask someone what they would like to do by asking **Tu veux...?** or **Vous voulez...?** (*Do you want to...?*).

Do you want to...?

Tu veux aller prendre un café **Do you want to** go for a coffee on samedi après-midi? Saturday afternoon?

Tu veux aller au café après le **Do you want to** go to a bar after cinéma? the movie?

J'organise une soirée. **Tu veux** I'm having a party. **Do you want venir?** to come?

Vous voulez nous retrouver au **Do you want to** meet us in the bar café demain soir? tomorrow night?

Vous voulez venir manger chez **Do you want to** come for dinner nous demain soir? tomorrow night?

BON À SAVOIR!

When talking about *tonight* and *tomorrow night*, use **ce soir** and **demain soir**.

Do you fancy...?

ça te dirait d'aller boire un pot?

Do you fancy going for a

ça te dirait d'aller au cinéma?

drink?

Do you fancy going to the cinema?

ça vous dirait d'aller prendre un café quelque part?

Do you fancy going for a coffee somewhere?

ça vous dirait d'aller voir un match de foot?

Do you fancy going to a football match?

BON À SAVOIR!

The French expressions for *going for a drink* are **boire un verre** or **boire un pot**. These expressions are quite informal, and are used with friends and people you know well.

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

If you want to talk about the plans you've made for social activities, you can say **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*). **I'm going to...**

Je vais inviter des amis pour mon anniversaire.

I'm going to have some friends over for my birthday.

Je vais aller à la soirée de Laurent samedi prochain.

I'm going to Laurent's party next Saturday.

On va dîner chez des amis ce soir.

Are you going to...?

We're going to have dinner at our friends' house tonight.

Vous allez inviter beaucoup de personnes?

Are you going to invite many people?

Tu vas aller à la soirée de Susie?

Are you going to Susie's party?

Quand est-ce que **tu vas pouvoir** venir? When **will you be able to** come?

Perhaps I'll...

Je vais peut-être y aller.

Perhaps I'll go.

Je vais peut-être reprendre un dernier **Perhaps I'll** have another verre.
drink.

Je vais peut-être organiser une soirée. **I may** have a party.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're planning to go out socially, you will need to ask for some information about what's available or what's on. To ask questions that can be answered *yes* or *no*, just put **est-ce que** before what you want to know.

Is there...?

Est-ce qu'il y a un cinéma ici?

Is there a cinema here?

Est-ce qu'il y a des concerts **Are there** any free concerts on gratuits ce week-end? this weekend?

Est-ce qu'il y a un match de rugby **Is there** a rugby match on this cet après-midi? afternoon?

Est-ce qu'il y a des réductions
pour les étudiants?

Is there a discount for
students?

BON À SAVOIR!

Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are translated by **Estce qu'il y a...?**

To ask someone whether they have something, for example, in a bar or at the theatre, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*).

Do you have...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que vous avez une carte des **Do you have** a cocktail cocktails?
menu?

Est-ce que vous avez des **Do you have** any programmes?
programmes?

Est-ce que vous avez de la bière **Do you have** beer on pression?
draught?

To obtain specific information, for example, what time something starts or finishes or how much it costs, you can use phrases such as **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*) and **Combien coûte...?** (*How much...?*). **What...?**

Ils jouent **quel** genre de musique? **What** play? kind of music do they

Tu vas dans **quel** bar? **What** bar are you going to?

Tu as des billets pour **quelle** **What** showing have you got
séance? tickets for?

Qu'est-ce qu'il passe au cinéma en ce **What's** on at the cinema at the
moment? moment?

What time...?

À quelle heure commence le film? **What time** does the film start?

À quelle heure finit le concert? **What time** does the concert
finish?

On a commandé le taxi **pour quelle** **What time** is the taxi ordered
heure? for?

How much...?

Combien coûte l'entrée?

How much does it cost to get in?

Combien coûte un billet pour la représentation de ce soir?

How much is a ticket for this evening's performance?

Combien coûte le programme?

How much is it for a programme?

How long...?

Combien de temps dure l'opéra?

How long does the opera last?

Vous allez être dans ce bar pendant **combien de temps**?

How long are you going to be in this bar?

On met **combien de temps** pour aller au stade?

How long does it take to get to the stadium?

ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're asking for things, the easiest way to say what you want is to use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) or **on voudrait** (*we'd like*). **voudrais** and **voudrait** are from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like...

Je voudrais une vodka orange, s'il vous plaît.

I'd like a vodka and orange, please.

Je voudrais deux tickets pour «Un long dimanche de ançailles».

I'd like two tickets for "A very long engagement".

Je voudrais un billet pour le match Rouen-Cherbourg.

I'd like a ticket for the Rouen-Cherbourg match.

On voudrait payer, s'il vous plaît.

We would like to settle the bill, please.

J'aimerais une place à l'orchestre. **I'll have...**

I'd like a seat in the stalls.

Je vais prendre un thé au lait.

I'll have a cup of tea.

Je vais prendre un gin tonic.

I'll have a G & T.

On va prendre une autre bouteille de blanc de la maison.

We'll have another bottle vin of house white.

To ask someone for something, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*).

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir une carafe **Can I have** a jug of d'eau? water?

Est-ce que je peux avoir un billet pour **Can I have** a ticket for le spectacle? the show?

Est-ce qu'on peut avoir l'addition?

Can we have the bill?

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

When you're out socializing you will probably want to say what you like or dislike. To say what you like, you can use **j'aime bien** (*I like*) which isn't as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore** (*I love*). If you want to say that you don't like something, use **je n'aime pas** (*I don't like*).

I like ...

J'aime bien les lms d'horreur.

I like horror lms.

[Your Click Matters](#)

J'aime bien la techno.

I like techno music.

J'adore l'opéra.

I love opera.

I don't like...

Je n'aime pas aller au théâtre. **I don't like** going to the theatre. **J'ai**

horreur du pastis. **I can't stand** pastis.

To talk about what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*). **préfère** comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page 270](#).

I prefer...

Je préfère les lms d'art et d'essai.

I prefer arthouse lms.

Je préfère aller voir un lm **plutôt** qu'un concert.

I'd rather see a lm **than** go to a concert.

Je préfère le vin à la bière.

I prefer wine **to** beer.

Je préfère y aller un autre jour.

I'd rather go another day.

Tu préfères les lms français **ou** américains?

Do you prefer French **or** American lms?

If you want to ask other people what they like, use **Tu aimes..?** (*Do you like...?*) for someone you know well, and **Vous aimez...?** for someone you do not know well, or for more than one person. **Do you like...?**

Tu aimes musicales? les comédies

Do you like musicals?

Vous aimez aller au cinéma?

Do you like cinema? going to the

Tu n'aimes pas le football?

Don't you like football?

If you want to ask someone whether they enjoyed a play, Im and so on, you can ask **Ça t'a plu?** (*Did you enjoy it?*).

Did you enjoy it?

Ça t'a plu?

Did you enjoy it?

ça m'a vraiment plu.

I really enjoyed it.

ça ne m'a pas plu du tout.

I didn't enjoy it at all.

If you want to express your opinion of something you've seen or of somewhere you've been, you can use the verbs **croire** and **penser** to say what you think.

I think...

Je pense que ça va te plaire.

I think you'll like it.

Je pense qu'ils vont gagner.

I think they'll win.

Tu ne penses pas que la pièce était un peu longue?

Don't you think the play was a bit long?

Je crois que c'est une actrice formidable.

I think she is a fantastic actress.

Je crois que c'est un bon Im.

I think it's a good Im.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that you have to use **que** (*that*) in French, even though it's optional in English.

In my opinion...

[Your Click Matters](#)

À mon avis, Spielberg est un **In my opinion**, Spielberg is a metteur en scène formidable. wonderful director.

À mon avis, cette salle de concert **In my opinion**, this concert est sans pareille. hall is second to none.

À mon avis, la n laissait vraiment **In my view**, the ending was à désirer. very weak.

What do you think of...?

Qu'est-ce que vous pensez de ses lms? **What do you think of his lms?**
lms?

Qu'est-ce que tu penses du rap? **What do you think of rap music?**

Qu'est-ce que tu en dis, de ce bar? **What do you make of this café?**

If you want to agree or disagree with someone, you can say **je suis d'accord** (*I agree*) or **je ne suis pas d'accord** (*I don't agree*). **I agree...**

Je suis d'accord. **I agree.**

Je suis d'accord avec toi. **I agree with you.**

Je suis totalement d'accord avec ce que vous dites. **I totally agree with what you say.**

Non, je ne suis pas d'accord. **No, I don't agree.**

Je ne suis pas du tout d'accord. **I don't agree at all.**

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

When you're out, you may want to ask someone if it's OK for you to do something. One useful way of asking for permission

[Your Click Matters](#)

is to use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce qu'on peut...?** (*Can we...?*). **peux** and **peut** are from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux m'asseoir n'importe où? **Can I** sit anywhere?

Est-ce que je peux payer par carte?

Can I pay by card?

Est-ce que je peux prendre cette chaise?

Can I take this chair?

Est-ce qu'on peut s'installer en terrasse?

Can we sit outside?

Est-ce qu'on peut fumer ici?

Can we smoke here?

Do you mind...?

Ça vous dérange si je fume?

Do you mind if I smoke?

Ça vous dérange si on s'assoit ici?

Do you mind here? if we sit

Vous permettez-vous? que je me joigne à

Do you mind if I join you?

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you're going out.

Où voulez-vous vous asseoir?

Where would you like to sit?

Fumeur ou non fumeur?

Smoking or non-smoking?

Vos billets, s'il vous plaît.

Can I see your tickets,
please?

Voulez-vous acheter un programme? Would you like to buy a programme?

Ça vous dérange d'échanger de place avec moi? Would you mind swapping places?

Tu es libre demain?

Are you free tomorrow?

Je ne suis pas libre la semaine prochaine.

I'm busy next week.

Quand est-ce que ça t'arrange?

When would be a good time for you?

Je t'offre un verre.

Let me get you a drink.

C'est moi qui offre.

This is on me.

Tu as passé une bonne soirée?

Did you have a good time tonight?

Merci de m'avoir invité.

Thank you for inviting me.

Merci, vous n'auriez pas dû.

Thank you, you shouldn't have.

Qu'est-ce que je vous sers?

What can I get you?

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips In a

café or bar:

- You generally don't need to go to the bar to be served. The waiter will come to you. In small towns, the waiter will just leave **l'addition** (*the bill*) on your table, and you pay when you're ready. In busy places, they might ask you to pay as soon as you get your drinks.

[Your Click Matters](#)

- If you ask for **un café**, you will be given an espresso. You need to specify if you want a large coffee **un grand café** or **un café allongé**. A white coffee is **un café au lait**.
- You need to specify that you want your tea with milk, otherwise it will be served black or with lemon. Ask for **un thé au lait**.
- French people don't really buy rounds (**une tournée**). Because they'll only have one drink or maybe two, someone will offer to pay if it's two people or a small group. In a larger group, everybody will chip in.
- Expressions for *Cheers!* in French include **À votre santé!** (shortened to **Santé!**), **À la vôtre!** and **Tchin-tchin!** To one person you know well, you will say **À ta santé!** or **À la tienne!**

At somebody's house:

- You may be invited for **le dîner** (*dinner*), **le déjeuner** (*lunch*), or sometimes just **l'apéritif** – a drink before a meal. This is a handy way of inviting someone without making a night of it. If you don't know someone very well (new neighbours for example), it's a good way of getting to know them without having to spend too long with them!
- When invited to someone's house for dinner, French people usually bring flowers or chocolates rather than wine as a present. If a French-speaking person brings you a gift, you can always say **merci, tu n'aurais pas dû** (*thank you, you shouldn't have*).

At the cinema:

- New lms come out on a Wednesday (**mercredi**) in France. (because French school kids are usually o on a Wednesday afternoon). **Closing times:**
- Times may vary a little depending on the area of France you're in, but usually **bars** close around 1 am – **à une heure du matin**. **Les boîtes de nuit** (*clubs*) tend to close between 3 and 5.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Passez une bonne journée! – Have a nice day!**

[Your Click Matters](#)

If you're planning to see the sights in a French-speaking city or country, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to ask where you can go, what you can do there and how much it will cost using natural French.

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

You may need to be able to say what you'd like to do in French. To do this, you can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais monter au clocher. **I'd like** to go up the church tower.

Je voudrais prendre des photos de ce tableau, si c'est possible. **I'd like to** take some pictures of this painting, if that's OK.

On voudrait aller à la cathédrale. **We'd like to** take the bus to the cathedral.

On voudrait visiter l'exposition de peintures. **We'd like to** see the art exhibition.

You may also want to show your enthusiasm about doing something. To say *I'd love to*, you can use **j'aimerais vraiment**, or **ça me plairait vraiment de** followed by a verb in the infinitive.

I'd love to...

J'aimerais vraiment voir la grotte de Lascaux.

I'd love to see the cave paintings of Lascaux.

J'aimerais vraiment emmener les enfants au parc Astérix.

I'd love to take the kids to the Astérix theme park.

Elle aimerait vraiment voir le Mont Saint-Michel.

She'd love to see the Mont Saint-Michel.

Ça me plairait vraiment de faire un baptême de parapente.

I'd love to try paragliding.

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

It is very likely that you will want to talk about what you are planning to do on your trip. In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) followed by a verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

I'm going to...

Je vais visiter le château de Versailles. **I'm going to** visit the Palace of Versailles.

Je vais téléphoner pour savoir si c'est ouvert le dimanche.

I'm going to phone to find out if it's open on Sundays.

On va emmener les enfants avec nous.

We're going to take the kids with us.

Est-ce que tu vas faire toute la guidée? guided tour? **Are you going to** do the whole visite

You can use both **je compte** and **j'ai l'intention de** to talk about what you intend to do.

I intend to...

Je compte y aller avec un guide de montagne. **I intend to** go with a haute mountain guide.

On compted'Auvergne cet été. faire le tour des volcans **We intend**
to Auvergne volcano trail thissummer. do the

Est-ce que vous comptez y passer beaucoup de temps? **Do you intend to** spend much time there?

J'ai l'intention de retourner au musée d'Art et d'Industrie la prochaine fois. **I intend to** go back to the musée d'Art et d'Industrie la prochaine fois. next time.

Qu'est-ce que **vous avez l'intention** de visiter en premier? **What do you plan to** visit **de** visiter first?

If you want to talk about the plans that have been made, you can use **je dois** followed by the infinitive, which is the equivalent of *I'm to*. **dois** comes from **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

I'm to...

Je dois retrouver le groupe à **l'm to** meet up with the group at quatre heures. four.

On doit passer la nuit dans un **We're to** spend the night in a

refuge et atteindre le sommet mountain hut and reach the le
lendemain. summit the following day.

On doit visiter les jardins **We're to** visit the grounds in the l'après-
midi. afternoon.

À quelle heure **est-ce qu'on** What time **are we supposed to get doit**
arriver? there?

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your colleagues or friends in French. One way of doing this is to use **je propose de** (*I suggest*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **propose** comes from the verb **proposer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **proposer**, see [page 269](#).

I suggest...

Je propose de visiter l'écomusée. **I suggest** centre. we visit the heritage

Je propose de pique-niquer dans **I suggest** we have a picnic in the le parc.
park.

Je propose de reporter la visite **I say** we postpone the trip to the du
zoo à lundi. zoo until Monday.

Qu'est-ce que vous proposez comme activité? nous **What do you suggest**
we do?

BON À SAVOIR!

Don't worry, you won't be proposing to anyone by using **je propose!** The French expression for *to propose to somebody* is **demander quelqu'un en mariage.**

You can make a suggestion using the phrase **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*). You will notice that French speakers very often omit **ne** to make sentences shorter.

Why don't...?

Pourquoi ne pas faire le tour de **Why don't** we walk round the la vieille
ville à pied? old town?

Pourquoi tu ne prends pas des **Why don't** you take some photos
depuis la tour? pictures from the tower?

Pourquoi pas louer une carriole **Why don't** we hire a horse-
pour voir la ville? drawn carriage to see the town?

Pourquoi pour aller à Montmartre? tu prends **pas** le métro **Why**
don't underground to go to Montmartre? you take the

Another way of making suggestions is to say **on devrait** (*we should*). **devrait** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page](#)

281.

We should...

On devrait monter en téléphérique.

We should take the cable car to the top.

On devrait revenir demain pour voir le reste.

We should come back tomorrow to see the rest.

Tu devrais aller voir le spectacle son et lumière ce soir.

You should go to the sound and light show tonight.

Vous devriez louer un vélo pour faire le tour de l'île.

You should hire a bike to cycle round the island.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

If you need some information, many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence – this will make you sound more informal. **Is...?**

Est-ce que le château **est** intéressant? **Is** the castle interesting?

Est-ce que la visite **est** guidée?

Is it a guided tour?

L'entrée du musée **est** gratuite ou est-**Is** the museum free or do ce qu'il faut payer? you have to pay?

Est-ce que c'est une balade di

cile? **Is it** a di

cult walk?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que c'est accessible aux personnes handicapées? **Is there** easy access for disabled people?

You may also need to ask if something is available in the place you're visiting. Use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

Is there...?

Est-ce qu'il y a un office de tourisme dans cette ville? **Is there** a tourist information office in this town?

Est-ce qu'il y a quelque chose à voir à Montauban? **Is there** anything to see in Montauban?

Est-ce qu'il y a des prix pour les pensionnés? **Is there** a discount for seniors?

Est-ce qu'il y a des momies dans le musée? **Are there** any mummies in the museum?

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a à voir à Lille? **What is there** to see in Lille? Ça mérite d'être visité? Is it worth a visit?

In order to obtain more specific information, you can use **quel** (*what*) for a masculine noun and **quelle** (*what*) for a feminine noun.

What...?

Quel est le meilleur moment pour aller? **What's** the best time to go?

Quelle est la station la plus proche? **What** is the nearest station to

de l'Arc de Triomphe? the Arc de Triomphe? visite guidée? tour?

Quelles sont les heures
d'ouverture?

What are the opening hours?

C'est **quel** genre de peinture?

What type of painting is it?

Le dépliant est écrit **en quelle** langue? **What** language is the leaflet
written **in**?

What time...?

À quelle heure est-ce qu'on se
retrouve au bus?

What time do we meet at the
bus?

À quelle heure ferme le parc
d'attractions?

What time does the theme
park close?

À quelle heure est la prochaine

What time is the next guided

À quelle heure est-ce qu'on arrive? What time do we get there?

To ask how much something is, use **Combien coûte...?** (*How much is...?*). To ask how much it costs to do something, use **Ça coûte combien de...?** and then the verb in the infinitive. These come from the verb **coûter**. To find out more about **-er** verbs like

coûter, see [page 269](#).

How much is...?

Combien coûte un ticket au tarif
étudiant?

How much is a student
ticket?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Combien coûte la traversée en bateau?

How much is the ferry crossing?

Ça coûte combien de faire une excursion à Péroutes?

How much is it to take a trip to Péroutes?

Ça coûte combien d'y aller en avion?

How much is it to y there?

How long...?

Combien de temps dure la visite?

How long does the tour last?

Combien coûte cette carte postale, s'il vous plaît?

How much is this postcard, please?

Combien de temps dure la promenade bateau? **How long** does the boat trip last?

Combien de temps ça prend pour y get there?

How long does it take to aller?

To ask how you do something, you can use **Comment est-ce qu'on...?** (*How do you...?*) followed by the verb in the present tense or **Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour...?** followed by the verb in the infinitive. For more information about the present tense, see [page 272](#).

[272](#).

How do you...?

Comment est-ce qu'on va dans la
vieille ville?

How do you get to the old town?

Comment est-ce qu'on accède au **How do you** get to the second
deuxième étage? oor?

Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour **How do you** choose which choisir la
langue du language the commentary's commentaire? read in?

Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour **How do you** buy tickets? acheter des
tickets?

ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're out and about in a French-speaking city or country, you will want to be able to ask for things in French. Use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais avoir...?** (*Could I have...?*).

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir deux **Can I have** two tickets for the entrées
pour le musée, s'il vous museum, please?

plaît?

Est-ce que je peux avoir le **Can I have** the programme programme du
concert de ce soir? for this evening's concert?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir some headphones to hear the commentary? **Could I have** some headphones to hear the commentary?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir un musée? **Could I have** a map of the plan du musée? museum?

Very often you will want to say that you need something in particular. To do this use **il me faut** or **il me faudrait** (*I need*) – remember that **faudrait** sounds more polite than **faut**.

I need...

Il me faut l'adresse du musée. **I need** museum. the address of the

Il lui faut deux tickets de plus. **She needs** two more tickets.

Il me faudrait un plan de la ville. **I need** a street map of the city.

Il nous faudrait un guide qui **We need** a guide who can speak parle anglais. English.

If you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Do you have...?* or *Would you have...?*). **avez** and **auriez** are from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

Do you have...?

Est-ce que vous avez des dépliants en **Do you have** any brochures anglais? in English?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que vous avez des audioguides **Do you have** any audio dans d'autres langues? guides in other languages?

Vous avez un journal local, s'il vous **Have you got** a local plait? newspaper, please?

Vous auriez de la documentation sur **Would you have** information on trips in this any les circuits touristiques de la région? area?

When you want to ask if someone can do something for you, use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Can you...?* or *Could you...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**, about which you can

find out more on [page 284](#).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez nous prendre en photo?

Can you take a picture of us?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire quels **Can you** tell me what the sont les horaires de visite? opening hours are? **Est-ce que vous pourriez** me faire **Could you** take me passer par la vieille ville? through the old town?

Est-ce que vous pourriez m'aider, s'il vous plait?

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

Could you help me,
please?

There may be occasions where you want to ask for permission to do something. To do this, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*). **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux prendre des photos? **Can I** take pictures?

Est-ce que je peux sac? entrer avec mon **Can I** take my bag in?

Est-ce qu'on peut garer la voiture ici? **Can we** ^{here?} park our car

Est-ce que je pourrais vous emprunter **Could I** borrow your votre guide
une a seconde? guidebook for second?

Another way of asking for permission is to use **Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...?** (*Do you mind if...?*). **Do you mind if...?**

Est-ce que ça vous dérange si **Do you mind if** I take my bag
j'entre avec mon sac? inside with me?

Est-ce que ça vous dérange si on **Do you mind if** we sit on the
s'asseoit dans l'herbe? grass?

Est-ce que ça vous dérange si je laisse la poussette ici? **Do you mind if I leave the pushchair here?**

Is it a problem if...?

Est-ce que ça pose un problème si je fume? **Is it a problem if I smoke?**

Excusez-moi, **est-ce que ça pose un problème si je prends des photos?** Excuse me, **problem if is it a** |
take **problème si je prends des photos?** pictures?

Est-ce que ça vous pose un problème si je paye par carte bleue? **Is it a problem for you if I pay by card?**

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER If you want to talk

about what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*) which is not as strong as **j'aime** or **j'adore**

(*I love*). You can also substitute **bien** with **beaucoup** (*a lot*), **vraiment** (*really*) and **assez** (*quite*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas**. These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on **aimer**, see [page 275](#).

I like...

J'aime bien visiter les galeries d'art moderne. **I like** visiting modern art galleries.

J'aime bien les feux d'artifice. **I like** rework displays.

J'aime beaucoup cette sculpture. **I like** this sculpture **a lot**.

J'adore les petits villages de Provence. **I love** the small villages of Provence.

Tu aimes bien ce genre d'architecture? **Do you like** this type of architecture?
I don't like...

Je n'aime pas les excursions en bus. **I don't like** bus tours.

Je n'aime pas russes. les montagnes **I don't like** roller-coasters.

Je n'aime pas du tout faire la queue. **I don't like** having to queue **at** queue. **all.**

If you want to say what you prefer, you can use **je préfère** (*I prefer*). If you want to say that something would suit you better, use **je préférerais** or **j'aimerais**

mieux (*I'd rather*).

I prefer...

Je préfère les musées **aux** édifices religieux.

Je préfère éviter ce quartier.

I prefer to avoid that area.

On préfère y aller à pied **que** de prendre le bus.

We'd rather walk **than** take the bus.

I prefer museums **to** religious buildings.

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux passer toute la semaine à Marseille. **I'd rather** spend the whole week in Marseilles.

Je préférerais prendre le funiculaire. **I'd rather** take the funicular railway.

On aimerait mieux rejoindre le groupe plus tard. **We'd rather** meet up with the group later.

On préférerait profiter du beau temps et aller au musée un autre jour. **We'd rather** enjoy the nice weather and go to the museum another day.

COMPLAINING

You may have to complain about something which you're unhappy with. To do this, you can say **excusez-moi** or **pardon, je voudrais me plaindre** (*excuse me, I wish to complain*) and go on to describe what you're unhappy about. **I'm not happy...**

Je ne suis pas content de notre guide. **I'm not happy with** our guide.

Je ne suis pas content d'avoir payé si cher pour ça. **I'm not happy that** I had to pay so much for it.

I'm disappointed...

Je suis déçu de notre sortie. **I'm disappointed with** our trip.

Je suis déçu de la façon dont on nous a traités. **I'm disappointed with** the way we were treated.

Les enfants **sont déçus de** ne pas avoir vu les clowns. The children **were disappointed that** they didn't get to see the clowns.

To say what you think of something, use **je trouve que**. The verb **trouver** on its own means *to find*, but when it is followed by **que** it means *to think*. Don't forget to add **que** (*that*) after **trouver**. It's optional in English, but not in French. For more information on **er** verbs like **trouver**, see [page 269](#).

I think...

Je trouve que c'est un peu cher **I think** it's a bit expensive for

pour ce que c'est.

what it is.

On trouve que le guide ne **We think that** the guide doesn't donne pas assez d'explications. explain things clearly enough. **Je trouve que** ce n'est pas très **I don't think** it's very well bien organisé. organized.

Je n'ai pas trouvé le musée **I didn't think** the museum was très intéressant. very interesting.

Another way of expressing your disappointment is to use **c'est dommage que** (*it's a shame that*). The verb that follows is in the subjunctive, which you can find

out more about on [page 274](#).

It's a shame that...

C'est dommage qu'il n'y ait rien pour les enfants.

It's a shame that there's nothing for children.

C'est dommage que le dépliant ne **It's a shame that** the leaflet soit qu'en français. is only in French.

C'est dommage que le bâtiment **It's a shame that** the main principal
ne soit pas ouvert. building isn't open.

There's...

Il y a très peu d'information **There's** very little information sur
l'histoire de ce lieu. about the history of this place. **Il y a**
beaucoup de bruit dans **There's** a lot of noise in the le musée.
museum.

Il n'y a pas d'aménagements
pour les handicapés.

There are no facilities for the
disabled.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that **il y a** translates as both *there is* and *there are*.

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you're likely to hear when you're sightseeing.

En quelle langue est-ce que vous What language would you voudriez
avoir les informations? like the information in?

Voici un dépliant en anglais.

Here's a leaflet in English.

Vous avez une carte d'étudiant?

Do you have a student card?

Le musée est ouvert de neuf heures à The museum's open from
trois heures. nine to three.

La galerie est fermée le dimanche.

The gallery's closed on Sundays.

La prochaine visite guidée est à dix heures.

The next guided tour's at ten.

Combien de tickets est-ce que vous voudriez?

How many tickets would you like?

C'est huit euros par personne.

It's eight euros each.

Les photos sont interdites.

You're not allowed to take pictures.

Est-ce que je peux fouiller votre sac? Can I search your bag?

Laissez votre sac et votre manteau au vestiaire. Please leave your bag and coat in the cloakroom.

Est-ce que ça vous a plu?

Did you enjoy it?

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- The **Journées du Patrimoine** are two days (at the weekend) in mid-September during which you can visit monuments and museums for free. You can find useful information about this event on the website of the French Ministry of Culture (**le Ministère de la Culture**) at the following address:

<http://www.culture.gouv.fr>.

- Another French cultural event is **la fête de la musique**. It is a music festival held on the first day of summer (21 June). Throughout France, amateur and professional musicians perform for free in parks, streets and squares.

- In the high season there is often a lot going on; local newspapers are a good way of keeping you informed about social and cultural events and telling you what there is to see in a given area.

Remember to have a look at the **marchand de journaux** (*newsagent's*) – you may even find some local newspapers in English!

- If you're planning to go to a French museum or art gallery on a Tuesday, check that it will be open first, as many of them have their **fermeture hebdomadaire** (*weekly day off*) on Tuesdays. Some major museums, such as the **Musée d'Orsay** in Paris, are closed on Mondays.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Je peux vous aider?** –
Can I help you?

Whether you're planning to shop for clothes or household items, get in your groceries or just pick up a postcard, this unit will help give you the confidence to find the best bargains and shop till you drop using typical natural French.

ASKING FOR THINGS

When you're shopping in a French-speaking country, you may be asked **On s'occupe de vous?** (*Are you being attended to?*). If you're just browsing, say **je regarde**

[Your Click Matters](#)

seulement (*I'm just browsing*), or if someone else is already serving you, you can say **on s'occupe de moi, merci.** (*I'm already being served, thanks*). Alternatively, if you know what you want, use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** is from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [page](#)

[285.](#)

I'd like...

Je voudrais deux kilos de pommes de terre, s'il vous plaît.

Je voudrais une carte mémoire pour mon appareil photo numérique.

Je voudrais un melon bien mûr, s'il vous plaît.

Je voudrais essayer ces chaussures en 38.

J'en **veux** deux de plus, s'il vous plaît.

I'd like a memory card for my digital camera.

I'd like a melon that's nice and ripe, please.

I'd like to try a 38 in these shoes.

I want two more of these, **I'd like** two kilos of potatoes, please. **Could**

I have...?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir un kilo **Could I have** a kilo of d'oranges, s'il vous plaît? oranges, please?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir un carnet **Could I have** a book of de timbres? stamps?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir un sac, s'il **Could I have** a carrier vous plaît?
bag, please?

You can also say what you are looking for by using **je cherche** or **je suis à la recherche de** (*I'm looking for*).

I'm looking for...

Je cherche de la coriandre fraîche. **I'm looking for** coriander. fresh

Je cherche du tofu. **I'm looking for** tofu.

Je cherche un short pour mon ls **I'm looking for** shorts for my qui a dix
ans. ten-year-old son.

Je suis à la recherche d'un cadeau **I'm looking for** a present for a pour un
tout-petit.toddler.

At the market or in shops where an assistant is serving you, you can ask for something by saying **donnez-moi** (*give me*) followed by the amount that you want and **s'il vous plaît**. This comes from the verb **donner** (*to give*) in the imperative. For more information on the imperative, see [page 273](#).

Give me...

Donnez-moi une baguette bien cuite, **Give me** one well- red s'il vous
plaît. baguette, please.

Donnez-moi deux bouteilles de **Give me** two bottles of pineau, s'il
vous plaît.pineau, please.

Donnez-moi cinq cent grammes de **Give me** half a kilo of marrons.
chestnuts.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Mettez-moi deux douzaines d'huîtres, **Give me** two dozen oysters, s'il vous plaît. please.

When you've chosen what you want to buy, you can say **je vais prendre**, (*I'll take*). If you haven't made up your mind, say **je ne suis pas encore décidé** (*I haven't decided yet*).

I'll take...

Je vais prendre postales. ces deux cartes **I'll take** these two postcards.

Je vais prendre les bleues à la place **I'll take** the blue ones instead des marron. of the brown ones.

Je vais prendre le sac que vous **I'll take** the bag you rst m'avez montré
en premier. showed me.

Je ne vais pas prendre le jean **I won't take** the jeans after nalement.
all.

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

Shopping isn't always what you'd choose to do, is it? To say that you have to buy something or that you have to do something in French, you can use **il faut que** (*I have to*) and then the verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I have to...

Il faut que j'achète de
nouvelles chaussures.

I have to buy some new shoes.

Il faut que je passe à la
boulangerie.

I have to stop at the baker's.

Il faut que tu demandes à la
vendeuse pour essayer.

You have to ask the shop assistant if
you want to try things on.

Il faut qu'on achète un
nouvel aspirateur.

We have to buy a new vacuum
cleaner.

I must...

Je dois trouver une robe pour la fête **I must** find a dress for the de
samedi. party on Saturday.

Je dois trouver un cadeau **I must** find a birthday present d'anniversaire
pour ma sœur. for my sister.

Je dois acheter un costume pour **I must** buy a suit for the mon
entretien. interview.

To talk about things you need, use **il me faut** or **il me faudrait** (*I need*).

I need...

Il me faut des lunettes de ski. **I need** some ski goggles.

Il me faut des croissants. **Il I need** some croissants. Do you vous en
reste? have any left?

Il me faudrait des piles pour **I need** some batteries for my mon réveil.
alarm clock.

Qu'est-ce qu'il te faut pour les What **do you need** for your vacances?
holidays?

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

You may want to talk about what you're thinking of buying or where you're thinking of going. French uses the phrase **je pense** (*I'm thinking*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

I'm thinking of...

Je pense aller au marché **I'm thinking of** going to the market demain.
tomorrow.

Je pense faire les boutiques **I'm thinking of** going shopping in à Paris.
Paris.

On ne pense pas aller en **We don't think we'll** go into town ville ce
week-end. this weekend.

Tu penses passer au **Do you think you'll** stop at the supermarché en
rentrant? supermarket on your way home?

I'm going to...

Je vais acheter un nouveau **I'm going to** buy a new maillot de bain.
swimming costume.

Je vais faire les soldes ce week- **I'm going to** go to the sales this end.
weekend.

On va acheter un nouveau lit. **We're going to** buy a new bed.

I hope to...

J'espère trouver quelque chose à moins de
20 euros.

I hope to find something for
under 20 euros.

J'espère trouver un canapé à moitié prix pendant les soldes.

I hope to get a half-price sofa in the sales.

On espère trouver un cadeau pour Laurent et Mélanie.

We hope to find a present for Laurent and Mélanie.

EXPRESSING OPINIONS

As you look at items for sale, you may well want to make comments to a French-speaking friend or to the shop assistant. To give your opinion, use **je trouve** (*I think*). This comes from the verb **trouver**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **trouver**, see [page 269](#).

I think...

Je trouve cette armoire vraiment belle.

I think this wardrobe is really beautiful.

Je trouve ce magasin beaucoup trop cher.

I think this shop is far too expensive.

Je trouve que ce pull n'est pas assez chaud.

I don't think this jumper is warm enough.

Comment est-ce que tu trouves cette chemise?

What do you think of this shirt?

In my opinion...

À mon avis, cette robe est un peu trop longue. **In my opinion**, this dress is a bit too long.

À mon avis, ce rouge à lèvres est légèrement trop foncé. **In my opinion**, this lipstick is slightly too dark.

À votre avis, lequel de ces pantalons me va le mieux? **In your opinion**, which of these two pairs of trousers suits me better?

J'ai besoin de **ton avis sur** des I need **your opinion on** some appareils photos numériques. digital cameras.

You can use **je dirais que** (*I'd say that*) to give your opinion about something. **dirais** comes from the verb **dire**. Here, it is in the conditional, which can be used to say things in a less categorical way.

I'd say...

Je dirais que pour moi. c'est un peu serré **I'd say** it's a bit tight for me.

Moi, je dirais que ce cadeau va **I'd say that** she's going to like lui plaire. this present.

Je dirais que c'est une a aire. **I'd say that** it's a bargain.

Qu'est-ce que tu dis de la lampe? **What do you think of** this lamp? cette

If you want to ask for someone's opinion or advice, you can use **Vous me conseillez de...?** (*Do you think I should...?*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see [page 269](#).

Do you think I should...?

Vous me conseillez de prendre **Do you think I should** take the

le bleu ou le rouge?

blue one or the red one?

Lequel **est-ce que tu me** **conseilles d'acheter?**

Which **do you think I should** buy?

Qu'est-ce que vous me
conseilleriez?

What **would** you recommend?

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

If you're in a strange town, you may want to ask for some information, for example if there is a particular shop in the area. Simple! Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** in French. **Is there...?**

Est-ce qu'il y a un supermarché
près d'ici?

Is there a supermarket near
here?

Est-ce qu'il y a un parking près du
marché?

Is there a car park near the
market?

Est-ce qu'il y a un rayon bio?

Is there an organic food
section?

Est-ce que qu'il y a une garantie?

Is there a guarantee?

Il y a des caddies?

Are there any trolleys?

Is this...?

C'est le seul modèle que vous avez? **Is this** stock? the only model you

C'est la plus grande taille que vous **Is this** the biggest size you avez?
have?

C'est tout ce que vous avez comme **Are these** the only colours couleurs?
you have?

C'est le prix à la pièce ou au kilo?

Is this kilo? the price for one or per

To find out if something's available, you'll need to use the question **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*) or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Would you have...?*). **avez** and **auriez** are from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

Do you have...?

Est-ce que vous avez d'autres modèles? **Do you have** any other modèles?

Est-ce que vous l'avez en plus petit? **Do you have it** size? in a smaller

Est-ce que vous l'auriez dans une autre couleur? **Would you have it** in autre couleur?
another colour?

Est-ce que vous faites le même modèle en vert? **Do you do** the same model modèle en
vert? in green?

Est-ce que vous faites des vêtements pour enfants? **Do you do** children's pour
enfants? clothes?

In order to obtain specific information, for example, where something is, which item you should buy or when something will happen, you may want to ask **Où...?** (*Where...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*) or **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

Where...?

Où est le distributeur le plus proche,

Où est la caisse, s'il vous plaît? **Where's** the cash desk,
please?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire **où** est le rayon cosmétiques, s'il vous plaît? Can you tell me **where** the cosmetics department is, please?

Vous pouvez me dire **où** se trouve l'accueil, s'il vous plaît? Can you tell me **where** customers services are, please?

Où est-ce qu'on peut trouver des lunettes de soleil? **Where** can I find sunglasses?

Which...?

Quelle marque **est-ce que** vous conseillez? **Which** brand do you recommend?

Quelles piles **est-ce qu'**il faut que j'achète pour mon appareil photo? **Which** batteries do I need to buy for my camera?

À quel étage est le rayon vêtements pour hommes? **Which** floor is the menswear department **on**?

Le marché se tient **quel jour**? **What day's** market day?

Lequel est-ce que tu vas prendre? **Which one** are you going to get?

s'il vous plaît?

Where's the nearest cash point, please?

Laquelle de ces deux webcams est la moins chère?

Which one of these two webcams is the cheapest?

BON À SAVOIR!

To say *which one* use **lequel** for masculine singular nouns and **laquelle** for feminine singular things. To say *which ones* use **lesquels** for masculine plural things and **lesquelles** for feminine plural things.

When...?

Quand est-ce que vous fermez pour la pause déjeuner? lunch? **When** do you close for pause

Quand est-ce que les soldes commencent? **When** start? do the sales

What time...?

À quelle heure est-ce que vous ouvrez le matin? **What time** do you open in ouvrez le the morning?

À quelle heure est-ce que vous arrivez sur le marché? **What time** do you arrive on arrivez sur the market?

To be able to ask the price of something you can use either **Combien coûte...?** or **À combien est...?** (*How much is...?*). If you're asking about more than one thing, use **Combien coûtent...?** or **À combien sont...?** (*How much are...?*).

How much is...?

Combien coûte une bouteille de jus d'orange? **How much is** a bottle of d'orange? orange juice?

Combien coûtent les gues, s'il vous plaît? **How much are** the gs, vous plaît? please?

À combien est cet abat-jour? **How much is** shade? this lamp

À combien sont les cerises au kilo? **How much are** cherries per kilo?

Je vous dois **combien**?

How much do I owe you?

To ask whether you can do something, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*).

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux payer par carte?

Can I pay by credit card? **Est-ce**

que je peux avoir un paquet- **Can I** have it giftcadeau? wrapped?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me faire un discount?

Can you give me a prix?

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

To say that you like something, you can say **ça me plaît** (literally, *this pleases me*). You use **me plaît** with singular words and **me plaisent** with plural ones.

I like...

Cette boutique **me plaît**.

I like this shop.

Ces chaussures **me plaisent** beaucoup.

I like these shoes very much.

Achète-le, si **ça te plaît**.

Get it if **you like it**.

J'aime bien les antiquaires.

I like antique shops.

J'adore faire les soldes avec une copine.

I love going to the sales with a friend.

I don't like...

Ce style **ne me plaît pas**.

I don't like this style.

Ces gants **me plaisent moins**.

I don't like these gloves **as much**.

Je n'aime pas les grands magasins.

I don't like big stores.

On n'aime pas faire la queue.

We don't like queuing.

Of course you might not just want to say what you like and what you don't like when out shopping, you may also want to talk about what you prefer. To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. For more information on **à** followed by **le** or **les**, see [page 252](#).

I prefer...

Je préfère le vert.

I prefer the green one.

Je préfère les petites boutiques **aux** supermarchés.

I prefer small shops **to** supermarkets.

On préfère les produits frais **aux** surgelés.

We prefer fresh produce **to** frozen.

Je préfère acheter sur Internet **plutôt** **I prefer to** internet **rather than**

buy on the **que d'**aller dans les go to the shops. magasins.

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux quelque chose de **I'd rather** go for something plus classique. more classic.

J'aimerais mieux du café équitable.

I'd rather go for fairtrade coffee.

J'aimerais mieux d'acheter. essayer avant

I'd rather try before I buy.

On aimerait mieux n'acheter que des **We'd rather** buy only local produits locaux. produce.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

On shopping expeditions you may well want to make suggestions about what to choose or what to do next. You can do this by putting **Et si...?** (*How about...?*) at the beginning of a sentence. The verb that follows is in the imperfect. You can find out more about the imperfect on [page 272](#).

How about...?

Et si on faisait les boutiques une autre fois?

How about we go shopping autre fois?

Et si on essayait cette nouvelle bookshop?

How about trying that new librairie?

Et si on l'achetait sur Internet?

How about we buy it online? To

suggest what you and your friends could do, you can use **on pourrait** (*we could*).

We could...

On pourrait aller voir dans un autre magasin. another shop.

We could have a look in

On pourrait leur demander de nous commander. it for us.

We could ask them to order le

Tu pourrais leur demander un rabais. **You could** discount. ask them for a

[Your Click Matters](#)

Another simple way of making suggestions is to raise the tone of your voice at the end of a sentence. This will make you sound slightly more informal.

Shall I...

Je prends du pain?

Shall I get some bread?

J'achète un gâteau pour ce soir? **Shall I get** a cake for tonight?

On achète des timbres?

Shall we buy some stamps?

On va au supermarché?

Shall we go to the supermarket?

When offering to do something, you can say **laisse-moi** or **laissez-moi** (*let me*). It's followed by a verb in the infinitive.

Let me...

Laisse-moi payer.

Let me pay for this.

Laisse-moi porter les paquets.

Let me carry the shopping. **Laissez-**

moi vous aider. **Let me** help you.

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

To ask if you can do something, such as try on an item of clothing, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#). **Can I...?**

Est-ce que je peux essayer cette jupe? **Can I** try on this skirt?

Est-ce que je peux garder le **Can I** keep the hanger? cintre?

Je peux les essayer? **Can I** try them on?

Je pourrais ré échir encore **Could I** think about it for quelques minutes?
another few minutes?

I'll... if you don't mind

Je vais réessayer l'autre pantalon, **I'll** try the other trousers on **si ça ne vous dérange pas.** again, **if you don't mind.**

Je vais regarder les autres modèles, **I'll** have a look at the other **si ça ne vous dérange pas.** models, **if you don't mind.**

Je vais repasser samedi, **si ça ne I'll** come back on Saturday, **if vous fait rien.** **you don't mind.**

To ask for permission, you can use **Est-ce que vous permettez que...** (*May I...?*) followed by the verb in the subjunctive. You can find out more about the subjunctive on [page 274. May I...?](#)

Est-ce que vous permettez que je regarde de plus près? **May I** have a closer look?

Vous permettez que je goûte une **May I** try one of your oranges? de vos oranges?

Vous permettez qu'on sorte le **May we** take the alarm clock réveil de son emballage? out of its box?

Vous permettez que ma fille **Can my daughter** try on the
essaie la veste qui est en vitrine? jacket that's in the window?

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear when out shopping.

On s'occupe de vous?

Are you being served?

Est-ce que je peux vous aider?

Can I help you?

Vous faites quelle taille?

What size are you?

Vous avez besoin d'une plus petite taille?

Do you need a smaller size?

Vous voulez que j'aie chercher la taille au-dessus?

Shall I look for a larger size for you?

Vous l'aimeriez en quelle couleur?

What colour would you like it in?

Vous pensiez mettre combien?

How much were you thinking of spending?

On n'en a pas en rayon pour l'instant.

We don't have any in stock just now.

Et avec ceci?

Anything else?

C'est pour o rir?

Is it a present for someone?

Je vous fais un paquet-cadeau?

Shall I giftwrap it for you?

Malheureusement, on n'accepte queles espèces.It's cash only, I'm afraid.

Je regrette, mais on ne prend pas les l'm afraid we don't take cartes de crédit. credit cards.

Votre signature, s'il vous plaît. Your signature, please.

Giftbooks4u.com

[Your Click Matters](#)

Lifestyle Tips

- When entering and leaving a shop in France, you usually say **Bonjour/Au revoir Monsieur/Madame/Messieurs-Dames** (*hello/goodbye*) to the shopkeeper and the people in the shop, especially in small towns and villages where there is less anonymity.
- In an attempt to be more environmentally-friendly, many supermarkets have stopped providing plastic bags and expect their customers to re-use those they have at home. If you forget yours, you can still buy one from the cashier. You can ask for **un sac réutilisable** (*a reusable shopping bag*).
- You may have to take a ticket to get a place in the queue at the meat or cheese counters in some supermarkets. If you can't see where to get your ticket from, try asking **Où est-ce qu'on prend son ticket?** (*Where do I get my ticket?*).
- At the market and in the countryside, you might hear people use an old weight unit called **la livre**, which means half a kilo.
- Most sellers at vegetables stalls on French markets will give you **un bouquet de persil** (*a bunch of parsley*) with the fruit and vegetables you buy.
- If you're looking for bargains at the market, your best bet is to go at around noon, when **les marchands** (*sellers*) begin to clear their stalls. They often have goods that won't keep and that they'll be happy to sell you for next to nothing.

- You don't normally haggle in France but if you've bought a lot of goods or if you're a regular customer in a shop you can always ask the shopkeeper **Vous pouvez me faire un prix?** or **Vous me faites un prix d'ami?** (*Can you give me a discount?*).

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Service irréprochable!**
– **Excellent service!**

The phrases in this unit will help you make sure you communicate your needs when you're in a French-speaking country in natural French. You could be at the bank or bureau de change, the hairdresser's, looking for insurance or seeking advice on any other kind of service – the language you need is covered here.

GREETINGS

It is crucial if you want to sound natural in French that you greet people correctly. Say **bonjour**

[Your Click Matters](#)

Monsieur/Madame/Mademoiselle to someone you've never met; to someone you know a little, you can just say **bonjour**. Note that there is no equivalent in French for *good morning*, or *good afternoon* to say hello – French-speaking people just say **bonjour** during the day and **bonsoir** in the evening.

Have a good...!

Bonne journée!

Have a good day!

Bon week-end!

Have a good weekend!

Bon après-midi!

Good afternoon!

Bonne n de journée!

Good afternoon!

Bonne soirée!

Good evening!

BON À SAVOIR!

When entering public places or shops, especially in smaller towns and villages, it's quite common to acknowledge the shopkeeper and/or the customers and say **bonjour Messieurs Dames** (*if both male and female*) or **bonjour Messieurs** (*to gents*) or **bonjour Mesdames** (*to ladies*), depending on who is there.

When you want to say *goodbye*, use **au revoir**. To say *See you...!*, use **à** followed by **demain** (*tomorrow*), **plus tard** (*later*), **ce soir** (*tonight*) and so on.

See you...!

À demain!

See you tomorrow!

À plus tard!

See you later!

À ce soir!

See you tonight!

À lundi!

See you on Monday!

À dans deux semaines!

See you in two weeks!

TALKING ABOUT YOURSELF

Very often you will need to give personal details and some information about where you're staying and so on. To say what your name is, use **je m'appelle** (*my name is*) and then your name. **appelle** comes from the verb **appeler**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **appeler**, see [page 270](#). **My name is...**

Je m'appelle Davidson.
Richard Davidson.

Richard **My name is**

Je m'appelle Mary Rogers.

My name is Mary Rogers.

Mon mari s'appelle Olivier Dauga. **My husband's name is** Olivier Dauga.

I'm staying...

Je loge à l'hôtel.

I'm staying at a hotel.

Je loge chez l'habitant.

I'm staying with a host family.

On loge dans une maison de location.

We're staying in a rented house.

Je réside en France.

I live in France.

My address is...

Mon adresse ^{rue de la Boule, 17000 la} en France, **c'est** 7, **My address** de la Boule, 17000 La Rochelle. in France **is** 7 rue

[Your Click Matters](#)

Rochelle.

Mon adresse xe, **c'est** 29 Kelvin **My permanent address is** 29 Close, L3
OQT Liverpool. Kelvin Close, L3 OQT Liverpool.

L'adresse de mon hôtel, **c'est** **The address of** my hotel **is** Hôtel des Rois, 7
avenue Foch à Hôtel des Rois, 7 avenue Foch
Aix. in Aix.

To say where you're from and how long you're staying, you can use **je suis**. **suis** comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [page 282](#).

I am...

Je suis anglais.

I'm English.

Je suis d'Aberdeen en Écosse.

I'm from Aberdeen in Scotland.

Je suis en vacances.

I'm on holiday.

On est ici pour trois semaines.

We're here for three weeks.

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

When you're dealing with one kind of service or another, you may want to say that you have to do something in French. To do this, you use **il faut que** (*I have to*) and then the subjunctive, which you can find out more about on [page 274](#).

I have to...

Il faut que je passe au pressing.

I have to cleaner's. call in at the dry-

Il faut que je prenne les références **I have to** take down the details de ce produit. of this product.

Il va falloir que je commande un **I'm going to have to** order a nouveau chéquier. new cheque book.

Je ne suis pas obligé d'aller à la **I don't have to** go to the bank banque aujourd'hui. today.

BON À SAVOIR!

To say *I don't have to* use **je ne suis pas obligé de**. Don't use **il ne faut pas que** as it means *I mustn't*.

I need to...

Il faudrait que je passe au pressing. **I need to** cleaner's. go to the dry

Il faudrait que je me renseigne sur les **I need to** nd out about polices d'assurances. insurance policies.

Il faudrait que je fasse réparer mon **I need to** have my camera appareil photo. repaired.

You can also say what you have to do using **je dois** (*I must*) and **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*) with the infinitive form of the verb. **dois** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

I must...

Je dois m'arranger pour faire **I must** phone to arrange for récupérer mon repassage. my ironing to be picked up. **Je dois** leur laisser la pellicule à **I must** give them the film to développer. process.

On doit passer à l'agence **We must** call at the estate immobilière pour rendre les clefs. agent's to return the keys.

Il ne faut pas que j'oublie de **I mustn't** forget to make an rendez-vous chez appointment at the l'esthéticienne. beautician's.

BON À SAVOIR!

To say *I mustn't* use **il ne faut pas que** with the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#). **I need...**

J'ai besoin d'un conseil.

I need a piece of advice.

J'ai besoin de graver mes photos sur CD.

I need to burn my photos onto a CD.

J'ai besoin de faire des photocopies couleur.

I need to make some colour photocopies.

Nous avons besoin d'y réfléchir.

We need to think about it.

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

To say what you would like to do in French, use **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*). **voudrais** comes from **vouloir** and **aimerais** comes from **aimer**. For more information on these verbs, see [page 285](#) and [page 275](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais acheter un appareil jetable. camera.

I'd like to buy a disposable photo

Je voudrais signaler un problème.

I'd like to report a problem.

J'aimerais me faire couper les cheveux. prendre rendez-vous pour **I'd like**
to appointment to get my haircut. make an

J'aimerais connaître le taux de **I'd like to** know the change.
exchange rate.

je souhaite or **je souhaiterais** (*I wish*) are polite ways of saying what you want to do. They come from the verb **souhaiter**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **souhaiter**, see [page 269](#).

I wish to...

Je souhaite faire un virement. **I wish to** transfer money.

Je souhaite changer des livres en **I wish to** change pounds into euros.
euros.

Je souhaite parler au directeur de la **I wish to** speak to the bank banque.
manager.

If you want to have something done, put **faire** before the main verb of the sentence; for instance, *I want to have this film developed* is **je veux faire développer cette pellicule**.

I want to have...

Je veux faire développer cette **I want to have** this film pellicule.
developed.

Je veux faire nettoyer ma veste. **I want to** cleaned. **have** my jacket dry-

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're asking for information about particular services, you can ask someone if they know something by asking **Est-ce que vous savez...?** or **Est-ce que vous sauriez...?** (*Do you know...?*) followed by **où** (*where*), **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*) and so on. **Do**

you know...?

Est-ce que faire faire un double de clefs, s'il vous plaît? **vous savez** où je peux **Do you know** have a second key cut? where I can

Vous savez à quel ordre je dois faire **Do you know** make the cheque payable ^{who I should} le chèque? ^{to?}

Vous savez quand vous aurez la **Do you know** when you'll pièce? have the spare part?

Est-ce que vous sauriez où je peux **Do you know** where I can recharger ma carte? top up my phone?

You can use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

Is there...?

Est-ce qu'il y a un cybercafé dans le quartier? **Is there** an internet café in the area?

Est-ce qu'il y a un bon coiffeur en ville? **Is there** a good hairdresser in town?

Il y a des cabines de bronzage dans ce salon? **Are there** sunbeds in this salon?

Key questions you'll want to ask when finding out about services is how much something costs and how long it will take. Use **combien** to ask these questions.

How much is it...?

C'est combien pour une coupe et un brushing? **How much is it** for a cut and blow-dry?

C'est combien pour faire débloquer mon téléphone?

How much is it to have my phone unlocked?

Il faut compter combien pour faire nettoyer cette veste? **How long does it take...?**

How much would it be to have this jacket dry-cleaned?

Ça prend combien de temps pour l'argent? **How long does it take** for avoir the money to come through?

Il vous faut combien de temps pour développer deux pellicules? **How long does it take you** to develop two films?

Il faut compter combien de temps **How long does it take** to pour ouvrir un compte en banque? open a bank account?

Use **Comment on fait pour...?** (*How do you...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive to ask how you do something.

How do you...?

Comment on fait pour ouvrir un compte **How do you** open a en banque? bank account?

Comment on fait pour agrandir un **How do you** enlarge a document? document?

Comment on fait pour envoyer de **How do you** send l'argent au Royaume-Uni? money to the UK?

If you want to ask when something will be ready or available, use **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

When...?

Quand est-ce que les documents seront **When** will the documents prêts? be ready?

Quand est-ce qu'il faut que je passe **When** should I pick up prendre le linge? the laundry?

Quand est-ce que vous pouvez nous **When** are you available to voir? see us?

À quelle heure est-ce que fermez? **When** do you close? vous

ASKING FOR THINGS

To get something done the way you like it, you'll need to say what you'd like and how you want it done. To say what you'd like, you can use **j'aimerais** or **je voudrais** (*I'd like*) which come from the verbs **aimer** and **vouloir**. For more information on these verbs, see

[pages 275 and 285](#).

I'd like...

J'aimerais avoir un formulaire, s'il vous plaît.

J'aimerais transférer de l'argent.

I'd like to transfer some money.

Je voudrais prendre un rendez-vous pour mardi après-midi.

I'd like to make an appointment for Tuesday afternoon.

I'd like an application form, please.

Je voudrais vous plaît. une permanente, s'il **I'd like** a perm, please.

Questions beginning with **Est-ce que...?** tend to sound more polite than simpler ones like **Vous pouvez...?**, so it is better to use them when asking someone to do something for you; for example, **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive. **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me donner un reçu, s'il vous plaît?

Est-ce que vous pouvez m'appeler quand ce sera réparé?

Vous pouvez me faire un devis?

Est-ce que vous pourriez jeter un œil à mon appareil photo?

Vous pourriez me dire si c'est réparable, s'il vous plaît?

Would you mind...?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de me donner une photocopie du contrat?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de me l'envoyer par fax?

Could you possibly...?

Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de me recevoir cet après-midi?

Can you ring me when it's fixed?

Can you give me an estimate?

Could you have a look at my camera?

Could you tell me if it can be repaired, please?

Can you give me a receipt, please?

Would you mind waiting

Would you mind giving me a photocopy of the contract?

Would you mind sending it to me by fax?

Could you possibly see me this afternoon?

Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de **Could you possibly put**
d'attendre pour encaisser le chèque? before cashing the cheque?
mettre ces photos sur un CD? these photos on a CD?

Est-ce qu'il vous serait possible de **Could you possibly** extend prolonger
la garantie? the guarantee?

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Est-ce que vous auriez...?** (*Have you got...?*) to ask someone if they have something. **avez** and **auriez** come from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#). **Have you got...?**

Est-ce que vous avez de la **Have you got** any
documentation sur vos polices documentation about your
d'assurance? insurance policies?

Est-ce que vous avez un fax? **Have you got** a fax machine?

Est-ce que vous auriez des piles **Would you have** any AA
AA? batteries?

Est-ce que vous avez de quoi enlever **Do you have something to**
cette tache? remove this stain?

Do you sell...?

Vous vendez des kits mains libres? **Do you sell** hands-free kits?

Vous vendez des pellicules en noir **Do you sell** black and white et blanc?
Im?

Est-ce que vous vendez des **Do you sell** disposable
lentilles jetables? contact lenses?

ASKING FOR SUGGESTIONS

[Your Click Matters](#)

You may want to ask for advice or a recommendation. To ask for suggestions, use **Vous me conseillez de...?** (*Do you think I should...?*). **conseillez** comes from the verb **conseiller**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **conseiller**, see [page 269](#).

Do you think I should...?

Vous me conseillez de changer **Do you think I should** change mon argent à la banque ou au money at the bank or the bureau de change? bureau de change?

Vous me conseillez d'ouvrir un **Do you think I should** open a compte épargne? savings account?

Vous nous conseillez de changer **Do you think we should** les serrures? change the locks?

Qu'est-ce que vous me **What do you think I should** conseillez? **do?**

Would you recommend...?

Vous nous recommandez ce **Would you recommend** this modèle? model to us?

Vous recommandez ce produit? **Would you recommend** product? this

Vous nous recommandez de **Would you recommend that we** prendre une assurance tous take out comprehensive risques? insurance?

You can use **Est-ce qu'il faut que...?** (*Should I...?*) with the subjunctive to ask whether you should do something. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Should I...?

Est-ce qu'il faut que j'appelle le plombier?

Should I call the plumber?

Est-ce qu'il faut que je prévienne ma banque?

Should I advise my bank?

Est-ce qu'il faut demander un devis?

Do I need to ask for an estimate?

Qu'est-ce qu'il faut que je fasse?

What should I do?

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

Occasionally you might want to make a suggestion with regard to a particular service. To do this you can use **je pourrais** (*I could*).

I could...

Je pourrais contacter ma banque au Royaume-Uni. **I could** contact my bank in the UK.

Je pourrais remettre le rendez-vous à vendredi. **I could** change the appointment to Friday.

On pourrait revenir plus tard. **We could** come back later. **Can we agree on...?**

On peut se mettre d'accord sur un **Can we agree on** a prix? price?

On peut se mettre d'accord sur une **Can we agree on** a time heure de rendez-vous? to meet up?

On peut se mettre d'accord sur une **Can we agree on** a date? date?

To ask whether you had better do something, use **Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que...?** (*Is it better...?*) or **Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux que...?** (*Would it be better...?*) followed by the subjunctive, which you can find out

more about on [page 274](#).

Is it better...?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que je vienne le matin?

Est-ce qu'il vaut mieux que je m'adresse à un revendeur certifié?

Est-ce qu'il vaudrait mieux appeler l'après-midi?

Is it better if I go to a certified dealer?

Would it better to phone in the afternoon?

Is it better if I come in the morning?

MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

When you're dealing with services, you'll need to make arrangements with people. A simple way of asking someone what suits them, is to use **Ça vous va si...?** (*Is it all right with you if...?*). **va** comes from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

Is it all right with you if...?

Est-ce que ça vous va si je repasse à cinq heures? **Is it all right with you if** I come back at five pm?

Est-ce que ça vous va si je passe à votre bureau demain? **Is it all right with you if** I call at your office tomorrow?

Ça vous va si j'envoie le chèque Is it all right with you if I send par la poste? the cheque by post?

To discuss what the best arrangement is, you can use **Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait de...?** (*Would it be better for you if...?*) followed by the verb in the infinitive.

Would it be better for you if...?

Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait Would it be better for you if we **d'attendre** un peu? waited a little?

Est-ce que ça vous arrangerait Would it be better for you if we **de faire un accord écrit?** had a written agreement?

Ça vous arrangerait qu'on vous Would it be better for you if we **verse un acompte?** gave you a deposit?

...would be best for me.

Le mieux pour moi serait dix heures à votre agence.

Ten o'clock in your office **would be best for me.**

Le mieux pour moi serait un rendez-vous dans l'après-midi.

An afternoon appointment **would be best for me.**

Le mieux pour moi serait d'être livré à domicile.

Home delivery **would be best for me.**

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

In English, we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, put **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

I'm going to...

Je vais acheter une nouvelle carte SIM.

Je vais me renseigner auprès de ma banque en Grande-Bretagne.

On va vous payer par chèque.

I'm going to ask my bank in Britain.

We're going to pay you by cheque.

I'm going to buy a new SIM card.

Je vois mon banquier cet après-midi. **I'm going to see** my bank manager this afternoon.

Nous visitons un appartement cette semaine. **We're visiting** a at this semaine. week.

French speakers often use **je compte** or **j'ai l'intention de** to say *I intend to*. **compte** comes from the verb **compter**, and **ai** comes from **avoir**. For more information on **avoir** and **-er** verbs like **compter**, see [pages 280](#) and [269](#). **I intend to...**

J'ai l'intention d'investir dans un appareil photo plus perfectionné.

Je compte m'installer définitivement ici.

I intend to relocate here permanently.

Je compte ouvrir un nouveau compte.

I intend to open a new account.

I intend to buy a more sophisticated camera.

I'm hoping to...

J'espère recevoir les documents la **I'm hoping to** receive the semaine prochaine. documents next week.

J'espère terminer les travaux **I'm hoping to** have the work avant décembre. nished by December.

Nous espérons pouvoir **We're hoping** we can move in emménager le plus vite possible. as quickly as possible.

You can use **Est-ce que vous allez...?** (*Are you going to...?*) to ask people if they're going to do something. **allez** comes from the verb **aller** (*to go*). For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

Are you going to...?

Est-ce que vous allez changer **Are you going to** change the l'objectif? lens?

Est-ce que vous allez faire payer **Are you going to** charge for la main d'œuvre? labour?

Est-ce que vous allez pouvoir **Are you going to** be able to enlever cette tache? remove this stain?

To ask what someone is going to do, use **Qu'est ce que vous allez...?** (*What are you going to...?*). For questions asking when or how somebody is going to do something, just replace **qu'** with **quand** (*when*), **comment** (*how*), and so on. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

What are you going to...?

Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire?

What are you going to do?

Qu'est-ce que vous allez dire **What are you going to** tell the aux
assureurs? insurance company?

Quand est-ce que vous allez **When are you going to** nish terminer les
réparations? the repair work?

Comment est-ce que vous allez **How do you going to** me
dédommager? compensate me?

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*). To say what you don't like, just use **je n'aime pas**. These come from the verb **aimer**. For more information on

aimer, see [page 275](#).

I like...

J'aime bien avoir les cheveux
courts.

I like to keep my hair short.

J'aime beaucoup me faire faire les
ongles.

I really like getting my nails
done.

I don't like...

Je n'aime pas avoir trop d'argent
liquide sur moi.

I don't like carrying too much
cash on me.

Je n'aime pas trop laisser ma
voiture chez le garagiste.

I don't really like leaving my
car at the garage.

J'ai horreur de cette sonnerie de

I can't stand this ringtone.

J'aime bien avoir mes photos sur CD.

I like my photos on CD.

téléphone.

If you want to say what you prefer, use **je préfère** (*I prefer*).

To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. **préfère**

comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on

préférer, see [page 270](#).

I prefer...

Je préfère un contrat écrit.

I prefer a written contract.

Je préfère payer en plusieurs fois.

I prefer to pay in instalments.

On préfère ne rien signer pour l'instant. **We prefer not** to sign
anything for now.

Je préfère les photos en noir et
blanc **aux** photos couleur.

I prefer black and white
photos **to** colour ones.

Je préfère un abonnement à une
carte.

I prefer a contract **to** a top-up
card.

Use **j'aimerais mieux que** (*I'd rather*) followed by the verb in

the subjunctive to say that you'd rather someone did

something. For more information on the subjunctive, see

[page 274](#).

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux que remboursiez.

vous me

I'd rather you refunded me.

J'aimerais mieux que vous **I'd rather** you sent me the dossier par la poste. le through the post. m'envoyiez le

J'aimerais mieux que vous **I'd rather** you phoned téléphoniiez avant de passer. before calling in.

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when dealing with services.

Je peux vous renseigner?

Can I help you?

Ce sera prêt demain.

It'll be ready tomorrow.

Ce n'est pas encore prêt.

It's not ready yet.

Vous avez votre reçu?

Do you have your receipt?

Vous avez besoin d'un reçu?

Do you need a receipt?

Vous avez une pièce d'identité?

Do you have some
identification?

Quelle heure vous conviendrait le mieux?

What time of day would suit
you best?

Vous avez rendez-vous?

Do you have an appointment?

Veuillez rappeler demain.

Please ring back tomorrow.

Comment voudriez-vous régler?

How would you like to pay?

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- When getting things done, you'll need to know about **horaires d'ouverture** (*opening times*). Shops and businesses such as

[Your Click Matters](#)

hairdresser's, dry cleaner's and so on usually open at around nine in the morning and close at seven at night in France. Except in the bigger towns, most businesses close on Sundays, and many on Mondays too, so that their employees can have a two-day break. As for public services, they tend to close at five at the latest.

- **cartes à puce** (*chip and pin cards*) have been in use since the early 90s in France, although they were only recently introduced in the UK. You may be asked to **Tapez votre code!** (*Type in your PIN!*).
- Many banks have security doors with an entry bell which the customers ring to be let in. You will probably see the following instructions on such doors: **Sonnez** (*ring*), **Patientez** (*wait*) and **Entrez** (*enter*).
- If you want to make an appointment at the hairdresser's and so forth, the word for an appointment is **rendez-vous**. For instance you could say **je voudrais prendre rendez-vous pour jeudi matin** (*I'd like to make an appointment for Thursday morning*).

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Rétablis-toi vite!** – Get well soon!

If you happen to be taken ill, have an accident, get toothache or need some other medical advice while in a French-speaking country, the phrases in this unit will give you the confidence to talk to a doctor, dentist or pharmacist to help you get what you need.

DESCRIBING THE PROBLEM

You may find yourself in a situation where you have to describe what the problem is. To do this, you can use **j'ai**. This comes

[Your Click Matters](#)

from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

I've got a...

J'ai de la èvre.

I've got a temperature.

J'ai des plaques.

I've got a rash.

J'ai des palpitations.

I've been having palpitations.

Je ne sais pas ce que **j'ai**.

I don't know **what's wrong with me**.

Mon ls **est** cardiaque.

My son **has** a heart condition.

Je fais de l'hypertension.

I have high blood pressure.

If you want to say which bit of you hurts, and to talk about aches and pains, you use **j'ai mal à**. Remember that **j'ai mal à** followed by **le** becomes **j'ai mal au**, and **j'ai mal aux** when it is followed by **les**. For more information on **à** followed by **le** and **les**, see [page 252](#).

I've got a... ache

J'ai mal à la tête.

I've got a headache.

J'ai mal à l'estomac.

I've got stomachache.

Elle a mal aux dents.

She's got toothache.

J'ai mal au dos.

My back is sore.

J'ai mal

It hurts here.

ici. **I feel...**

Je me sens fatigué tout le temps.

I feel tired all the time.

Je me sens mieux maintenant.

I'm feeling better
now.

Je ne me sens pas bien du tout.

I feel awful.

Je me sentais bien hier.

I felt ne yesterday.

I'm...

Je suis allergique à la pénicilline.

I'm allergic to
penicillin.

Je suis sous antidépresseurs.

I'm on
antidepressants.

Je suis diabétique.

I'm diabetic.

Il est sous analgésiques.

He's on painkillers.

SAYING WHAT HAPPENED

If you've had some kind of accident, you will probably need to explain what happened. You can use **j'ai** or **je suis** followed by the form of the verb called the past participle. **ai** and **suis** come from the verbs **avoir** and **être**. For more information on the past tense, see [page 269](#).

I've...

J'ai eu un accident.

I've had an accident.

J'ai perdu un plombage.

I've lost a filling.

Je suis tombé dans les escaliers.

I fell down the stairs.

Je me suis cogné la tête.

I've bumped my head.

Elle s'est brûlée sur la cuisinière. **She burnt herself** on the stove.

I've never...

Je n'ai jamais eu un mal de tête **I've never had** such a bad pareil.
headache.

Il n'a jamais eu d'attaque. **He's never had** a t before.

Je ne me suis jamais senti mal. aussi **I've never felt** so ill.

Ça ne m'est encore jamais **It's never happened to me** arrivé. before.

You may be unlucky enough to have had a more serious accident. To say that you have broken something, use **je me suis cassé** (*I've broken*).

I've broken...

Je crois que je me suis cassé le bras. I think arm. **I've broken** my

dernière.

year.

Je

Il s'est cassé la jambe.

He's broken his leg.

**me
suis**

Elle s'est cassé une dent.

She's broken a tooth.

Je me suis foulé la cheville.

I've sprained my ankle.

cassé la clavicule l'année **I broke** my collar bone last BON À SAVOIR!

French speakers say *I have broken the leg* and so on instead of *I have broken my leg* and so on.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

[Your Click Matters](#)

When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **pardon** or

excusez-moi.

Is there...?

Pardon, est-ce qu'il y a un hôpital par ici?

Est-ce qu'il y a une pharmacie de garde près d'ici?

Est-ce que vous savez s'il y a un dentiste par ici?

Pardon, où est-ce que je peux trouver un médecin?

Excusez-moi, où est-ce que je peux trouver un poste de secours?

Is there a chemist's open near here?

Do you know if **there's** a dentist in the area?

Excuse me, **where can I find** a doctor?

Excuse me, **is there** a hospital nearby?

Excuse me please, **where can I find** a first-aid post?

BON À SAVOIR!

You use **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** to ask both *Is there...?* or *Are there...?* in French.

When you need an explanation of what something is exactly, or what it's for, use **Qu'est-ce que c'est que...?** (*What is...?*). For more general questions asking for information, use **quel** before a masculine word or **quelle** before a feminine word.

What's...?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que ce médicament?

What is this medicine?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que ces comprimés?

What are these tablets?

Quel est le numéro pour avoir une ambulance?

What's the number to call for an ambulance?

Quelle est l'adresse de l'hôpital?

What's the address of the hospital?

À quoi servent ces comprimés?

What are these tablets for?

Which...?

Je peux prendre rendez-vous avec **Which** docteur? **quel** appointment with?

Dans **quelle** rue est la clinique? **Which** street is the clinic in? Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire dans Can you tell me **which** ward **quelle** salle elle est? she's in?

Quelle est la meilleure clinique?

Which clinic is the best?

In order to get more specific information, you may need to ask questions such as **Comment...?** (*How...?*) or **Quand...?** (*When...?*).

How...?

Comment est-ce qu'on prend
rendez-vous avec le
chiropracteur?

Comment est-ce qu'on prend ce
médicament?

Comment est-ce qu'on s'inscrit à la
Sécurité Sociale?

How do you take this
medicine?

How do we register with Social
Security?

When...?

Quand est-ce qu'il faut que je me
fasse faire ma piqûre?

When do I have to have my
injection?

Quand est-ce que le médecin va
venir?

When is the doctor coming?

Quand commencent les visites?

When does visiting time
start?

How do you make an
appointment with the
chiropractor?

Quand est-ce que je dois prendre les **When do I have to take the**
comprimés? tablets?

À quelle heure ouvre le cabinet **What time does the doctor's medical?**
surgery open?

Many of the questions you will be asking can be answered by *yes* or *no*. You can either put **est-ce que** before what you want to know or alternatively you can raise the tone of your voice at the end of the sentence.

Is...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que c'est grave?

Is it serious?

Est-ce que l'hôpital **est** loin?

Is the hospital far?

Le centre de santé **est** ouvert
l'après-midi?

Is the health centre open in the
afternoon?

ASKING FOR THINGS

When you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** or **Vous avez...?** (*Have you got...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

Have you got...?

Est-ce que vous avez quelque chose
contre le mal de tête?

Have you got anything for a
headache?

Est-ce que vous avez quelque chose
contre le rhume des foins?

Do you have anything for
hay fever?

Vous avez un numéro d'urgence?

Do you have an emergency
telephone number?

Vous avez du paracétamol pour
bébés?

Do you have infant
paracetamol?

If you want to ask for something in French, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** or **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*). **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir un rendez-
pour demain, s'il vous plaît?
avoir de l'aspirine, **Can I have** a packet of
please?

Can I have an appointment
for tomorrow, please?
aspirin,
please?

Je peux avoir un pansement de bandage? **Can I have** a spare rechange?

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux voir un dentiste ce matin? **Can I** see the dentist this

matin?

morning?

Est-ce que je peux parler à un pédiatre tout de suite?

Can I talk to a paediatrician right away?

Est-ce que je peux boire de l'alcool avec ce médicament?

Can I drink alcohol with this medicine?

Quand **est-ce qu'on peut** passer prendre les résultats?

When **can we** collect the results?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*).

pouvez and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me prescrire chose pour les maux d'oreille, please? **Can you** prescribe quelque something for earache, s'il vous plaît?

Est-ce que vous pouvez envoyer une ambulance immédiatement? ambulance **Can you** send an ambulance straightaway?

Est-ce que vous pouvez appeler un médecin, s'il vous plaît? **Can you** call a doctor, please?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me donner **Can you give me** quelque chose
pour mon bébé qui fait something for my baby ses dents? who's
teething?

Could you...?

Est-ce que vous pourriez nous **Could you** take us to the emmener à
l'hôpital le plus proche? nearest hospital?

Est-ce que vous pourriez me prendre **Could you** check my blood la
tension? pressure?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de **Would you mind** nding me trouver
une in rmière qui parle me an English-speaking anglais? nurse?

Vous voulez bien me donner un **Would you mind** giving me rendez-
vous pour une visite de an appointment for a contrôle? checkup?

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

If you want to say what you'd like to do in French, use either **je voudrais** or **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*). They come from the verbs **vouloir** and **aimer**. For more information on **vouloir** and **aimer**, see [pages 285](#) and [275](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais prendre rendez-vous **I'd like to** make an appointment avec le
médecin. with the doctor.

Je voudrais voir un dentiste tout **I'd like to** see a dentist de suite.
straightaway.

Je voudrais acheter quelque **I'd like to** buy something for a chose contre
la toux. cough.

J'aimerais plombage. me faire faire un **I'd like to** have a tooth lled.

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux aller dans un hôpital **I'd rather** go to a private privé.
hospital.

J'aimerais mieux aller chez un médecin **I'd rather** see a female
femme **qu'**un médecin homme. doctor **thana** male one.

Je préférerais prendre des comprimés **I'd rather** take tablets **que de** me
faire faire une piqûre. **than** have an injection. **On préfère** les remèdes
naturels. **We prefer** remedies. natural

In French you can tell somebody what you need by using **j'ai
besoin de** (*I need*).

I need...

J'ai besoin de lendemain. la pilule du
I need the morning-after pill.

J'ai besoin d'un médecin qui puisse **I need** a doctor who can come venir
ici. here.

On a besoin d'une ambulance de **We urgently need** to call an
toute urgence. ambulance.

Est-ce que j'ai besoin d'une **Do I need** a prescription?
ordonnance?

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

[Your Click Matters](#)

You may wish to make a suggestion in French. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). This comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#). **We could...**

On pourrait pharmacien. demander au **We could** ask the pharmacist.

On pourrait prendre des **We could** get some
analgésiques chez le pharmacien. painkillers at the chemist's. **On**
pourrait téléphoner à sa famille. **We could** phone his family.

Another way of making suggestions in French is to ask **Pourquoi ne pas...?** (*Why don't...?*).

Why don't...?

Pourquoi ne pas appeler un
médecin?

Why don't we call a doctor?

Pourquoi ne pas demander un
rendez-vous avec le cardiologue?

Why don't we ask for an
appointment with the heart
specialist?

Pourquoi pas demander
comment se prennent ces
antibiotiques?

Why don't we ask how the
antibiotics should be taken?

Pourquoi tu n'expliques pas le
problème au médecin?

Why don't you explain the
problem to the doctor?

BON À SAVOIR!

You may have noticed that **ne** can be (and often is) omitted – this is mainly in spoken French.

[Your Click Matters](#)

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear at the doctor's or the hospital.

Comment allez-vous?

How are you?

Qu'est-ce qui vous arrive?

What seems to be the problem?

Cela fait combien de temps que vous sentez
comme ça? feeling like this?

Est-ce que vous avez des problèmes
santé? medical conditions? Do you have any existing de

Est-ce que vous prenez d'autres
medication? Are you on any other médicaments?

Est-ce que vous avez la nausée? Do you feel sick?

Est-ce que vous avez des vertiges? Do you feel dizzy?

Où est-ce que vous avez mal? Where does it hurt?

Ne buvez pas d'alcool tant que vous
prenez ce médicament. Don't drink alcohol while
you're taking this medicine.

Remplissez ce formulaire, s'il vous plaît. Please fill in this form.

Je peux avoir les informations concernant votre assurance maladie?
Can I have your medical insurance details?

Les résultats sont bons. The results are ne. Giftbooks4u.com

[Your Click Matters](#)

Lifestyle Tips

- If you think you need a doctor, you can go to **les urgences** – the A&E department of a hospital.
- You need to pay a fee – **les honoraires** – when you visit the doctor or dentist. You may then be given **une ordonnance** (*a prescription*) to take to **la pharmacie** (*the chemist's*). There isn't a fee for medicines, so the price you'll pay will vary according to the medicine you've been prescribed.
- When going to a health professional in France, you will be asked for your **carte européenne d'assurance maladie** – your *European Health Insurance Card* – which now replaces the E111 form. Like its predecessor, this card aims at making access to healthcare in any EU country hassle-free for all citizens of EU member states.
- In France, **pharmacies** (*chemists*) are easily recognizable from a distance thanks to the **croix verte** (*green cross*) sign displayed outside them.
- There is always a **pharmacie de garde** (*duty chemist's*) open when other chemists are shut. Its address will be prominently displayed outside all the other local pharmacies as well as in local newspapers.
- The mobile emergency medical service is called **SMUR** or **SAMU**. Its phone number is 15. If you think you need an ambulance in France, call this number and they'll decide what the best course of action is.

- In France when someone sneezes, you can say **À tes souhaits!** (*Bless you!* or literally *To your wishes!*), or **À vos souhaits!** to someone you don't know so well. If the person sneezes a second time, you can then say **À tes (or vos) amours! (Qu'elles durent toujours)** which literally means *To your love! (May it last forever)*.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Ne vous en faites pas!**
– **Don't worry!**

If you find yourself in a situation in France in which you need help, for example if you break down, are involved in an accident or are robbed, or even if you simply can't get the heating to come on, this unit will give the language to help you cope with confidence.

DESCRIBING THE PROBLEM

If you are asking somebody for help of some kind, you will need to be able to describe what the problem is. Use **il y a**

[Your Click Matters](#)

to mean both *there is* and *there are*, and **il n'y a pas de** to say *there isn't any* or *there aren't any*.

There is...

Il y a une odeur de gaz dans ma chambre. **There's** a smell of gas in my chambre.
room.

Il y a des cafards dans l'appartement. **There are** cockroaches in the l'appartement.
apartment.

Il n'y a pas de savon dans la salle de bain. **There isn't any** soap in the de bain.
bathroom.

Il n'y a pas de serviettes dans ma chambre. **There aren't any** towels in my chambre.
room.

Il y a eu un accident. **There's been** an accident.

You may need to explain exactly what the problem is. To do this you can often use **j'ai** (*I've got*) or **je n'ai pas de** (*I haven't got*). **ai** comes from the verb **avoir**.

For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

I've got...

J'ai un problème. **I've got** a problem.

J'ai un pneu à plat. **I've got** a flat tyre.

Je n'ai pas de pompe. **I haven't got** a pump.

On nous a volé et **nous n'avons pas assez d'argent** pour rentrer chez nous. **We've been robbed and we haven't got** enough money to get back home.

The problem you are having may be because you are not able to do something. In French you can use **je n'arrive pas à** to say what you can't do.

I can't...

Je n'arrive pas à faire démarrer la voiture.

I can't get the car to start.

Je n'arrive pas à allumer le chau e-eau – il est cassé.

I can't light the boiler – it's broken.

On n'arrive pas à ouvrir la porte de la chambre.

We can't open the door to the bedroom.

It may be the case, however, that you do not know how to do something. In French you would use **je ne sais pas** to talk about what you don't know how to do.

I can't...

Je ne sais pas changer un pneu.

I can't change a tyre.

Je ne sais pas conduire.

I can't drive.

Je ne sais pas très bien parler well.

I can't speak French very français.

If you want to say that you don't understand something, use **je ne comprends pas**.

I don't understand...

Je ne comprends pas ce que vous dire. **I don't understand** what you voulez mean.

Je suis désolé, mais **je ne** I'm sorry but **I don't comprends pas** le mode
d'emploi. **understand** the instructions. **On ne comprend pas** pourquoi
ça **We can't understand** why it ne marche pas. doesn't work.

SAYING WHAT HAPPENED

You will probably need to explain to somebody what happened. You can use **j'ai** (or sometimes **je suis**) followed by the past participle. **ai** and **suis** come from the verbs **avoir** and **être**. For more information on forming the past tense, see [page 269](#).

I have...

J'ai perdu mon passeport.

I've lost my passport.

J'ai eu un accident.

I've had an accident.

Nous avons enfermé les clés dans **We've locked** ourselves out of
l'appartement. the apartment.

Ma valise **n'est pas arrivée**.

My case **hasn't arrived**.

On est tombé en panne.

We've broken down.

Nous sommes en panne d'essence. **We've run out** of petrol.

I've been...

J'ai été agressé.

I've been mugged.

J'ai été cambriolé.

I've been burgled.

Ma voiture **a été** forcée.

My car's **been** broken into.

On nous a trop fait payer.

We've been overcharged.

On m'a arraché mon sac.

My bag's **been** snatched.

DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

If you have some kind of problem in France you may need to be able to give a description of someone or something. To do this you can simply use **est** (*is*) followed by an adjective. **est** comes from the verb **être**. For more information on **être**, see [page 282](#).

It is...

C'est un break noir.

It's a black estate car.

C'est photo intégré. un téléphone portable avec appareil **It's** a camera phone.

Ce sont des bijoux de très grande valeur. **They're** jewels. very valuable

Le sac **est** rouge.

The bag's red.

La valise **est** verte avec des roulettes.
wheels.

The suitcase **is** green with

Mon portefeuille **est en** cuir.

My wallet's **made of**
leather.

Il est grand et assez jeune.

He's tall and quite
young-looking.

You may also be asked to give more details about yourself or somebody else, for example, age, hair colour and so on. To do this, use **il a** or **elle a** (literally *he has* or *she has*). **a** comes

from the verb **avoir**. For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

He's...

Il a cinq ans.

He's ve years old.

Elle a huit ans.

She's eight.

J'ai trente ans.

I'm thirty.

BON À SAVOIR!

When talking about your or someone else's age, you must say **ans** in French.

He's got...

Il a les cheveux blonds et courts.

He's got short blond hair.

Elle a les cheveux bruns.

She's got brown hair.

Elle a les yeux verts.

She's got green eyes.

Ils ont les yeux marron tous les deux. They both have brown eyes.

She's wearing...

Elle porte un jean et un tee- She's wearing jeans and a green Tshirt vert. shirt.

Elle porte une robe orange.

She's wearing an orange dress.

Il portait un pull en laine et He was wearing a woolly jumper un pantalon noir. and black trousers.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

[Your Click Matters](#)

When you are asking for information you may need to get someone's attention in order to ask them a question. To do this you can use either **pardon** or

excusez-moi.

Is there...?

Excusez-moi, **est-ce qu'il y a** un garage par ici?

Pardon, **est-ce qu'il y a** un électricien dans le quartier?

Est-ce qu'il y a des hôtels à proximité?

Excuse me, **is there** an electrician in the area?

Are there any hotels nearby?

Excuse me, **is there** a garage around here?

BON À SAVOIR!

Both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?* are **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** in French.

Which...?

Quel plombier me recommandez- **Which** plumber do you recommend?

Excusez-moi, il faut faire **quel** Excuse me, **what** number do you dial for the police?

Quels documents est-ce que je dois **Which** documents do I need to show?

In order to obtain specific information, for example, how to do something, when something will happen or how much it will cost, you may want to ask **Comment...?** (*How...?*), **Quand...?** (*When...?*) or **Combien...?** (*How much...?*). **How...?**

Comment est-ce qu'on fait pour avoir une ligne extérieure? on fait pour **How** do I get an outside line?

Comment est-ce qu'on signale un vol? on fait pour **How** do we report a theft?

Excusez-moi, **comment est-ce qu'on va au garage?** Excuse me, **how** do we get to the garage?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire **comment** récupérer la valise? Can you tell me **how** we can get the suitcase back? **When...?**

Quand est-ce que vous allez venir réparer la climatisation? **When** will you come to x the air-conditioning?

Quand est-ce que vous allez livrer la valise? **When** will you deliver the suitcase?

Quand est-ce que je peux amener la voiture au garage? **When** can I bring the car to the garage?

Est-ce que vous savez **quand** on pourra voir l'avocat? Do you know **when** we'll be able to see the lawyer?

How much...?

Combien est-ce que ça va
coûter de réparer la voiture?

How much will it be to repair the
car?

Vous pouvez me dire **combien**
va coûter la réparation?

Can you tell me **how much** you
will charge me to x this?

Combien coûtent les frais de
dossier?

How much are the registration
fees?

ASKING FOR THINGS

If you want to ask for something in French, use **Est-ce que je peux avoir...?** or **Je peux avoir...?** (*Can I have...?*). **peux** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can I have...?

Est-ce que je peux avoir votre numéro
de téléphone?

Can I have your phone
number?

Est-ce que je peux avoir un autre
formulaire?

Can I have another
form?

Je peux avoir une autre couverture, s'il
vous plaît?

Can I have another
blanket, please?

Est-ce que je peux emprunter votre
portable pour passer un coup de l
urgent?

Can I borrow your
mobile to make an
urgent call?

If you want to find out if something is available, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*). **Do you have...?**

Est-ce que vous avez démarrage?
have jump leads?

des câbles de **Do you**

Excusez-moi, **est-ce que vous avez** Excuse me, **do you have** a un bureau des objets trouvés? lost property office?

Pardon, **est-ce que vous avez** ce document en anglais? Excuse me, **do you have** this document in English?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). **pouvez** and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#). **Can you...?**

Est-ce que vous pouvez vous plaît? m'aider, s'il
Can you help me, please?

Est-ce que vous pouvez police? appeler la **Can you** call the police?

Est-ce que vous pourriez recommander **Could you** recommend un électricien? an electrician?

Est-ce que vous pourriez me montrer **Could you** show me how comment fonctionne la douche? the shower works?

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

You may need to be able to say what you want or what you'd like to do in French. To do this, you can use either **je veux** (*I want*) or **je voudrais** (*I'd like*). **veux** and **voudrais** are both from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

I'd like to...

Je voudrais signaler un vol.

I'd like to report a theft.

Je voudrais téléphoner.

I'd like to make a call.

Je voudrais parler à un avocat.

I'd like to speak to a lawyer.

don't want to...

Je ne veux pas chambre.
rester dans cette
room.

I don't want to stay in this
room.

Je ne veux pas laisser ma
here.

I don't want to leave my car
voiture ici.

Nous ne voulons pas aller à
sans nos bagages.

We don't want to go to the hotel
l'hôtel
without our luggage.

If you want to say what your preference is, use **j'aimerais mieux**

(*I'd rather*).

I'd rather...

J'aimerais mieux faire appel à un
avocat qui parle anglais.

I'd rather hire a lawyer who can
speak English.

J'aimerais mieux être au rez-de-
chaussée **qu'**au premier étage.

I'd rather stay on the ground
floor **than** on the first floor.

On préférerait lire les documents
en anglais, si possible.

We'd rather read the documents
in English, if possible.

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

You may want to say what you have to do in French. Use **il faut que** (*I have to*) with the subjunctive or **j'ai besoin de** (*I need*). For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

I have to...

Il faut que j'aile à l'ambassade
britannique.

I have to go to the British
embassy.

Il faut que je recharge la batterie de
mon téléphone.

I have to charge up my
phone.

Il faut que je parle à un avocat. **I
need...**

I must speak to a lawyer.

J'ai besoin d'un pneu neuf.

I need a new tyre.

J'ai besoin de téléphoner.

I need to make a call.

J'ai besoin d'appeler un électricien.

I need to call an electrician.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

You may wish to make a suggestion to your Frenchspeaking acquaintances. One way of doing this is to use **on pourrait** (*we could*). **pourrait** comes from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

We could...

On pourrait appeler un
serrurier.

We could call a locksmith.

On pourrait demander le numéro d'un électricien à quelqu'un.

We could ask someone for the number of an electrician.

On pourrait toujours aller au bureau des objets trouvés.

We could always go to the lost property office.

Si tu préfères, on peut aller voir **If you prefer, we could** go to le gérant et expliquer le problème. the manager and explain the problem. problem.

You can also use **Et si...?** followed by a verb in the imperfect tense to suggest doing something. For more information on the imperfect, see [page 272](#).

How about...?

Et si on parlait à un avocat?

How about talking to a lawyer?

Et si on appelait ton consulat?

How about consulate? calling your

Et si on signalait le problème à la réception? **How about** reporting the fault to reception? reception?

Another way of making suggestions is to ask **Pourquoi est-ce qu'on ne... pas?** (*Why don't...?*). **Why don't...?**

Pourquoi est-ce qu'on ne demande pas de l'aide aux voisins? **Why don't**

we neighbours for help? ask the voisins?

Pourquoi est-ce qu'on n'appelle pas la réception? **Why don't we** call reception? pas la réception?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Pourquoi tu commissariat pour signaler le vol? ne vas pas au commissariat pour signaler le vol? Why don't you go to the police station to report the theft?

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

In English we often say *I'm going to* to talk about the future. French works the same way. To say that you're going to do something, use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) or **on va** (*we're going to*) before the verb. **vais** and **va** come from the verb **aller**. For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

I'm going to...

Je vais appeler le garage.

I'm going to call the garage.

Je vais signaler le vol à la police. **I'm going to** report the theft to the police.

Je vais appeler au secours avec mon portable. **I'm going to** call for help on my mobile.

On va appeler un électricien pour l'installation électrique. **We're going to** phone an electrician to fix the wiring. **Are you going to...?**

Est-ce que vous allez remorquer notre voiture? **Are you going to** tow our car back?

Est-ce que vous allez venir aujourd'hui? **Are you going to** come out today?

Vous allez nous appeler quand ce **Are you going to** call us when sera prêt? it's ready?

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you are likely to hear when you have some kind of problem.

Quel est le problème?	What's the problem?
Qu'est ce qui s'est passé?	What happened?
Est-ce que je peux avoir les coordonnées de votre assurance?	Can I have your insurance details?
Qu'est-ce qui a été volé?	What's been taken?
Est-ce que je peux avoir votre adresse, s'il vous plaît?	Can I have your address, please?
Vous êtes d'où?	Where are you from?
Où est-ce que vous logez?	Where are you staying?
Est-ce que je peux voir votre permis de conduire?	Can I have your driving licence?
Est-ce qu'il y avait des témoins?	Were there any witnesses?
Remplissez ce formulaire, s'il vous plaît.	Please fill in this form.

Giftbooks4u.com

Lifestyle Tips

- If you have to report a crime to the police in France, you'll need to go to the **commissariat de police** (*police station*) where you'll have

[Your Click Matters](#)

to **faire une déclaration** (*le a report*). In a big city, it is likely to be the **police nationale** (*national police*) you go to, though in rural areas it may be the **gendarmerie**, a police branch of the military.

- There are several types of police in France. There's the **police nationale** who are in charge of national security and public order in general. Then, there's the **police municipale** (*municipal police*) who mainly deal with traffic and minor crimes. There is also the **gendarmerie nationale** who look after rural policing and border patrols.
- As in the UK, if you're driving around France, you'll need to be careful where you park if you want to avoid paying a **contravention** (*ne*) or having your car towed away by the **camion-grue** (*tow truck*) and having to get it back at great expense from the **fourrière** (*pound*). Make sure you look at any signs and ask if you don't understand them. You can always ask **Que veut dire ce panneau?** (*What does this sign mean?*).

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Qui est à l'appareil? –
Who's calling, please?**

Talking on the phone is one of the hardest things to do in a foreign language, because you can't see the person you're speaking to, and therefore you can't rely on body language and facial expressions to help you understand and communicate. This unit gives you the language to overcome this and helps you to sound natural and confident when speaking on the telephone in French. It also covers different means of communication in French: fax, email, texting and the good old post.

MAKING A TELEPHONE CALL

[Your Click Matters](#)

If you want to tell someone that you need to make a phone call, use **je dois** (*I need to*). **dois** comes from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

I need to...

Je dois téléphoner.

I need to make a call

Je dois téléphoner à ma femme.

I need to phone my wife.

Je dois passer un coup de l à mon pote.

I need to give my mate a ring.

N'oublie pas que **tu dois** rappeler ta mère ce soir.

Don't forget **you need to** call your mum back tonight.

BON À SAVOIR!

The French expressions for calling someone are **téléphoner** (*to phone*) and **passer un coup de l** (*to ring*). The second one is less formal, just as it is in English.

Many of the questions you may want to ask can be answered by *yes* or *no*. To ask such questions, use **Estce que...?** with what you want to know. So, if you want to ask if someone has something, for example a telephone number, use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*) **Do you have...?**

Est-ce que vous avez personnel de Madame Kay, s'il vous le numéro **Do**

you have home number, please? Mrs Kay's plaît?

Est-ce que vous avez un numéro de fax? **Do you have** number? a fax

Est-ce que tu as un numéro de portable? **Do you have** number? ^{a mobile}

You can ask for something such as a telephone number in French by using **Quel est...?** before a masculine noun and **Quelle est...?** before a feminine noun.

What's...?

Quel est son numéro de téléphone?

What's her phone number?

Quel est le numéro des renseignements?

What's the number for directory enquiries?

Quel est l'indicatif de l'Irlande?

What's the dialling code for Ireland?

Je peux prendre **quelle** ligne **What** line can I use to make a pour appeler? call?

Je dois faire **quel** numéro pour appeler à l'extérieur?

What number do I have to dial to get an outside line?

WHEN THE PERSON YOU'RE CALLING ANSWERS

Once you've made the call and someone answers, you will need to say *hello* and tell them who's calling. The French expression **Allô?** is only used when speaking on the phone. You can say this whether you are making or receiving the call, and for any type of call, formal or informal. Always make sure you introduce yourself to the person who picks up the phone using **c'est** (*this is*).

Hello, this is...

Allô, c'est Madame Devernois.

Hello, this is Mrs Devernois.

[Your Click Matters](#)

**Allô Monsieur André, c'est Hello Mr André, this is Mr Monsieur
Ronaldson à l'appareil. Ronaldson speaking.**

**Bonsoir Madame Paoletti, c'est Good evening Mrs Paoletti,
Madame Marsh à l'appareil. this is Mrs Marsh speaking.**

Salut Tarik, c'est Flo. Hi Tarik, Flo here.

**Bonjour, Stéphanie est là? C'est de Hello, is Stéphanie in? This is
la part de Marie. I'm ... Marie.**

Je suis une collègue de Nicole. I'm a colleague of Nicole's.

Je suis un copain d'Émilie. I'm a friend of Émilie's.

Je suis la lle de Monsieur Cadey. I'm Mr Cadey's daughter.

**Allô, je suis le locataire du 5 rue Hello, I'm the tenant of 5 rue des
Cèdres. des Cèdres.**

If you want to ask for somebody in particular, use **Estce que...
est là?** (*Is... there?*).

Is...there?

**Est-ce qu'Olivier est là, s'il vous
plaît?**

Is Olivier there, please?

Est-ce que tes parents sont là?

Are your parents in?

**Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire si
Madame Revert est là?**

**Could you tell me whether
Mrs Revert is in?**

BON À SAVOIR!

If the person you want to speak to isn't in, the answer you
may hear is **désolé, il n'est pas là** (*sorry, he's not in*).

Is this...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que je suis bien au commissariat de police?

Is this the police station?

C'est bien le numéro de la mairie?

This is the number for the town hall, **isn't it?**

Je suis bien au 08 13 76 89 98?

Is this 08 13 76 89 98?

BON À SAVOIR!

French telephone numbers are read out in groups of two digits, so the number above would be read as: **zéro huit, treize, soixante-seize, quatre-vingt-neuf, quatre-vingt-dix-huit** (zero eight, thirteen, seventy-six, eighty-nine, ninety-eight).

There are several ways of asking whether you may do something. Starting your question with **puis-je** will make you sound very formal. **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*May I...?*) is much more frequent in

everyday spoken French.

May I...?

Puis-je parler au directeur, s'il vous plaît?

Est-ce que je pourrais parler à Cécile, s'il vous plaît?

May I speak to Cécile, please?

Est-ce que je pourrais avoir le numéro de l'hôtel Europa?

May I have the number of the Europa hotel?

May I speak to the manager, please?

One of the first things you may want to ask when you speak to someone is how they are. The French expressions **Comment ça va?** and **Ça va?** both mean the same thing – *How are you?*. You can also say **Comment vas-tu?** to one person you know well, and **Comment allez-vous?** to several people or to someone you don't know so well.

How are you?

Ça va?

How are you? Ça va bien?

Comment ça va?

How are you? How are you?

How's...?

Comment va?

How's life?

Comment va ton frère?

How is your brother?

Comment vont tes parents?

How are your parents?

In response to being asked how you are, you can use several different phrases. **Fine, thanks.**

Ça va bien, merci, et vous?

I'm fine, thanks, and you?

Bien, merci, et toi?

I'm fine, thanks, and you? Ça va pas mal, et

toi? Not bad. And yourself?

Ça ne va pas fort moment.
great lately.

en ce I haven't been

SAYING WHY YOU'RE CALLING

In the course of the telephone call you will often want to explain to someone why you are calling or where you're calling from. To do this, you use the verb **appeler**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **appeler**, see [page 269](#).

I'm phoning about...

J'appelle à propos de demain I'm phoning about tomorrow soir. night.

J'appelle à propos de votre annonce dans le journal.

I'm phoning about your ad in the paper.

J'appelle pour parler à Marie.

I'm phoning to talk to Marie.

J'appelle pour avoir des détails sur vos tarifs.

I'm phoning to get further details on your rates.

I'm calling from...

J'appelle d'une cabine.

I'm calling from a public phone.

J'appelle de mon portable. **I'm calling from** my mobile. **Je vous**

appelle de mon travail. **I'm calling** you **from** work.

If you want to ask whether you can do something, use **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*).

Can I...?

Est-ce que je peux laisser un message? **Can I** leave a message?

Est-ce que je peux rappeler plus tard? **Can I** call back later? **Je peux**

vous laisser un message à lui **Can you** pass on a transmettre?

message, please?

If you are asking someone whether they can do something for you, you should use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*). These come from the verb **pouvoir**. For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Can you...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez lui dire que Paul a appelé, s'il vous plaît? **Can you** let him know that Paul rang, please?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me passer Johanna, s'il vous plaît? **Can you** put me through to Johanna, please?

Tu peux lui faire la commission, s'il te plaît? **Can you** pass the message on to him, please?

Est-ce que vous pourriez lui transmettre un message? **Could you** give her a message?

Vous pourriez lui demander de me rappeler? **Could you** ask her to call me, please?

GIVING INFORMATION

When you make a phone call in French, you may well be asked to give certain pieces of information. To give your phone number or address, use **mon numéro, c'est** (*my number is*) and **mon adresse, c'est** (*my address is*).

My number is...

Mon numéro de xe, c'est le...

Myis... home phone number

...et mon numéro de portable, c'est le... *...and* **number** **my** mobile **is...**

**Le numéro de téléphone de mon hôtel, My hotel phone number c'est le...
is...**

My address is...

Mon adresse à Paris, c'est...

My address in Paris is...

Mon adresse c'est... en Angleterre,

My address in England is...

**J'habite le 6 Maryhill Drive à
Cork.**

**My address is 6, Maryhill Drive,
Cork.**

Je loge à l'Hôtel Méditerranée. I'm staying Hotel. at the Méditerranée

To give details of where you can be contacted, use **vous pouvez me joindre** (*you can contact me*).

You can contact me...

Vous pouvez me joindre au 09 98 02 46 23. You can contact me on 09 98 02 46 23.

Tu peux me joindre sur mon landline. You can contact me on my xe.

Tu peux la joindre entre midi et deux heures. You can get her between twelve and two.

Tu peux me laisser un message sur le répondeur. You can leave me a message on sur le my answerphone.

ANSWERING THE TELEPHONE

You always answer the telephone with the same French expression **Allô?**. This is only used when speaking on the phone. You can say this whether you are making or receiving the call, and for any type of call, formal or informal.

Hello?

Allô?

Hello?

Allô, oui?

Hello?

Allô, j'écoute?

Hello?

If the person on the other end of the line asks for you, you answer **elle-même** if you are a woman, and **luimême** if you are a man. This is a formal way of saying *speaking*. If you want to be less formal but still polite, you can simply say **oui, c'est moi**.

Speaking.

Elle-même. Speaking. Lui-même. Speaking.

Oui, c'est moi.

Yes, it's me.

When you answer the telephone you often need to ask whether the caller would like to leave a message, call back later and so on. Use **Vous voulez...?** to someone you don't know well, or **Tu veux...?** to someone you know well to say *Would you like to...?.* **voulez** and **veux** both come from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

Would you like to...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Vous voulez laisser un **Would you like to** leave a message?
message?

Vous voulez qu'il vous **Would you like him to** call you rappelle? back?

Tu veux rappeler un peu plus **Would you like to** call back a bit tard?
later?

Would you mind...?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de parler plus lentement, s'il vous **Would**
you mind more slowly, please? speaking plaît?

Est-ce que ça vous dérangerait de **Would you mind** saying that répéter,
s'il vous plaît? Je vous again, please? I can't hear you entend mal.
very well.

Est-ce que ça vous ennuerait de **Would you mind** spelling it l'épeler, s'il
vous plaît? out, please?

Ça t'ennuerait de me rappeler **Would you mind** calling me demain?
back tomorrow?

ENDING A TELEPHONE CALL

When you end a telephone call in French, you can say
goodbye as you normally would face to face. Use **au revoir**
Madame/Mademoiselle/Monsieur to say goodbye to people you
don't know well. You can just say **au revoir** to the people you
know, or **salut** if you want to sound more informal. **Goodbye!**

Au revoir Laurent!

Goodbye Laurent!

Au revoir Monsieur Blum!

Goodbye Mr Blum!

Allez, **salut** Emma! On se rappelle!

Right, **bye** Emma! Talk to you later!

Have a good...!

Bonne journée!

Have a good day!

Bon week-end!

Have a good weekend!

Bonne soirée!

Have a good evening!

To say *See you...!*, use **à** followed by **demain** (*tomorrow*), **plus tard** (*later*), **ce soir** (*tonight*) and so on.

See you...!

À demain!

See you tomorrow!

À plus tard!

See you later!

À ce soir!

See you tonight!

À bientôt!

See you soon!

À plus!

Later!

As part of saying your goodbyes, you may want to pass your greetings or best wishes on to other people. To do this, use **passe le bonjour à** (*say hello to*). **Say hello to...**

Passe le bonjour à ta famille.

Say hello to your family.

Passe le bonjour à ta sœur.

Say hello to your sister.

Salue tes parents **de ma part**.

Say hello to your parents **for me**.

Lara te **dit bonjour**.

Lara **says hello**.

Mes amitiés à ton père.

Give your father **my best wishes**.

BON À SAVOIR!

You may be interested to know that the French for *to hang up on someone* is **raccrocher au nez de quelqu'un** which literally means *to hang up on someone's nose*.

Occasionally you may be forced into nishing a call earlier than you had planned, especially on a mobile phone. To tell someone what the problem is, use **je n'ai... plus de** (*I don't have any...left*).

I don't have any... left

Je n'ai bientôt **plus de** batterie.

I don't have much battery **left**.

Je n'ai presque **plus de** crédit.

I've almost **no** credit **left**.

BON À SAVOIR!

Of course, the main reason for mobile calls ending suddenly is often that the network coverage isn't adequate. To tell someone that they're breaking up, use **ça va couper**.

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear when using the telephone.

Qui est à l'appareil?

Who's calling, please?

C'est de la part de qui?

Who shall I say is calling?

Ne quittez pas, s'il vous plaît.

Please hold the line.

Ne quitte pas, je vais le chercher.

Hang on a minute, I'll get him.

Vous n'avez pas fait le bon numéro.

You've got the wrong number.

Vous connaissez le numéro de poste?

Do you have the extension number?

Je transfère votre communication.

I'll put you through.

Le numéro que vous avez composé n'est pas attribué.

The number you have dialled doesn't exist.

Vous êtes bien au 09 73 47 60 21.

You've reached 09 73 47 60 21.

Veuillez laisser un message après le bip.

Please leave a message after the tone.

Cet appel vous sera facturé 1 euro la minute.

This call will cost 1 euro per minute.

Tous nos opérateurs sont en ligne, merci de rappeler ultérieurement.
our operators are busy, please call back later.

All

Votre correspondant n'est pas en mesure de prendre cet appel; veuillez laisser votre message sur sa boîte vocale.
Your call is being forwarded to the mobile messaging service.

Ça va couper.

You're breaking up.

Merci d'avoir appelé.

Thanks for calling.

[Your Click Matters](#)

WRITING LETTERS AND EMAILS

There will be times when you need to write a letter or send an email in French. Here are some useful phrases which you can use to do this. You can also have a look at examples of letters and emails in French.

Starting a personal letter or email

Chère Aurélie,... Dear Aurélie,... Ma chère tante,... My
dear aunt,...

Salut Élodie!

Hi Élodie!

Ending a personal letter or email

Cordialement.

Kind regards.

Bien à vous, Marie.

Yours, Marie.

Amitiés, Jean.

Kind regards, Jean.

Je t'embrasse, Naïma.

Love, Naïma.

À bientôt!

See you soon!

Mes amitiés à Fadou.

Send my best wishes to Fadou.

Grosses bises, Charlotte.

Love, Charlotte.

Fichier Edition Affichage Outils **Composer** Aide Envoyer

A: Nouveau message
Répondre

Cc: Répondre à tous
Faire suivre

Copie cachée: Fichier joint

Objet:

Tu veux sortir demain soir? Le nouveau James Bond passe à l'Odéon, si ça t'intéresse.

Si tu ne peux pas demain, je suis libre samedi midi. On pourrait déjeuner ensemble.

Grosses bises

Nadia

Saying your email address
In French, when you tell someone your email address, you say:
michel arobase europost point ef-ayr

Maxime Leduc
18, rue des Tulipes
65004 Gervais

Your own name and address →

Town/city you are writing from, and the date → *Gervais, le 14 février 2006*

Salut Frédéric !

Je te remercie de ta lettre. J'étais très contente d'avoir de vos nouvelles.

Merci beaucoup pour les CD que tu m'as envoyés. Tu as vraiment bien choisi puisqu'il s'agit de mes deux chanteurs préférés: je n'arrête pas de les écouter!

Sinon, rien de nouveau ici. Je passe presque tout mon temps à préparer mes examens qui commencent dans quinze jours. J'espère que je les réussirai tous, mais j'ai le trac pour mon examen de maths: c'est la matière que j'aime le moins.

Maman m'a dit que tu pars en Crète avec ta famille la semaine prochaine. Je te souhaite de très bonnes vacances, et je suis sûr que tu reviendras tout bronzé.

Dis bonjour à Marie de ma part.

À bientôt!

Maxime

Monsieur Léon Mougeot
45, avenue de la République
75101 Paris
FRANCE

There should always be a comma between the street number and street name.

The postcode comes before the name of the town.

Starting a formal letter or email

Cher M. Provence,... Dear Mr Provence,... Madame,... Dear
Madam,...

Madame, Monsieur,...

Dear Sir or Madam,...

Ending a formal letter or email

Veillez accepter, Madame, l'expression
de mes sentiments distingués.

Yours faithfully/sincerely

Veillez accepter, Monsieur, l'expression
de mes sentiments distingués.

Yours faithfully/sincerely

J'attends votre réponse. Cordialement,
Mme Banks.

I look forward to hearing from
you. Kind regards, Mrs Banks.

Je vous prie de croire, Monsieur, à l'assurance de mes sentiments
Yours faithfully/sincerely distingués.

BON À SAVOIR!

French formal letters sometimes nish with longwinded
standard expressions such as the ones above. You can get
away with only writing **cordialement** followed by your name
but it is slightly less formal.



TEXTING

Texting is now as important a part of French communication as it is in the UK. If you would like to text in French, here are some abbreviations used in French text messaging. You will notice that just as the numbers 2, 4 and 8 are used in English in text messages (*C U 2moro; R U coming 4 Xmas?; Gr8!*), French texts also use 1 for all “in/un/ain/” sounds, 2 for “de/deu” sounds and 6 for “si/sis” sounds.

Texto	French	English
@+	<i>à plus tard</i>	see you later
@2m1	<i>à demain</i>	see you tomorrow
biito	<i>bientôt</i>	soon
cpq	<i>c'est pas grave</i>	it's no big deal
dsl	<i>désolé</i>	I'm sorry
entouk	<i>en tout cas</i>	in any case
G la N	<i>J'ai la haine</i>	I'm gutted
je t'M	<i>je t'aime</i>	I love you
mdr	<i>mort de rire</i>	rolling on the floor laughing
mr6	<i>merci</i>	thanks
MSG	<i>message</i>	message
pzk	<i>pas de quoi</i>	you're welcome
parske	<i>parce que</i>	because
qqn	<i>quelqu'un</i>	someone
rii	<i>rien</i>	nothing
svp	<i>s'il vous plaît</i>	please
TOK	<i>t'es OK?</i>	are you OK?
TOQP	<i>t'es occupé?</i>	are you busy?
we	<i>week-end</i>	weekend
XInt	<i>excellent</i>	excellent

Giftbooks4u.com *Lifestyle Tips*

- It is better to avoid loud ringtones (**sonneries**) and mobilephone conversations in public places in France, and more particularly in public transports and restaurants. It is even less accepted than it is in the UK.
- If you really need to send a text message or to make a phonecall while in company, it is always better to apologize and explain: **excusez-moi, je dois passer un coup de l** (*sorry, I need to make a phone call*) or **je dois envoyer un SMS** (*I need to send a text message*).
- In France, you might come across special phone numbers called **numéro vert**[®] with the pre x 0800, **numéro azur**[®] (0810) and

[Your Click Matters](#)

numéro indigo® (0820 or 0825). These are xedrate numbers, used mainly by companies. **numéros verts**® are free from a landline, **numéros azur**® are at a reduced rate and **numéros indigo**® are charged at local rates.

- As in Britain, the use of a **téléphone portable** (*mobile phone*) is forbidden while driving. The use of **kits mains libres** (*hands-free kits*) however is allowed.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Trois, deux, un...**

Partez! – Three, two, one... Go!

[Your Click Matters](#)

LES NOMBRES – NUMBERS

When communicating in French you'll often need to say and understand numbers, so here's a list to help you.

0	zéro	
1	un(e)	
2	deux	
3	trois	
4	quatre	
5	cinq	
6	six	
7	sept 8	huit
9	neuf	
10	dix	
11	onze	
12	douze	
13	treize	
14	quatorze	
15	quinze	
16	seize	
17	dix-sept 18	dix-huit

19 dix-neuf

20 vingt

BON À SAVOIR!

A little tip: French speakers never use the letter O to refer to **zéro** (*zero*), as we do in English.

In French, the word **un** (*one*) can change its ending. The masculine form **un** becomes **une** before a feminine noun.

one

Combien de DVD as-tu acheté? – Seulement **un**. How many DVDs did you buy? – Only **one**.

J'ai **un** frère. I've got **one** brother.

Il ne me reste qu'**une** cigarette. I've only got **one** cigarette left.

Tu as écrit combien de pages? – **Une**. How many pages have you written? – **One**.

Although most consonants aren't pronounced at the end of French words, the **-t** in **vingt** is when it is followed by a number.

21 vingt et un(e)

22 vingt-deux

23 vingt-trois

24 vingt-quatre

25 vingt-cinq

26 vingt-six

27 vingt-sept **28** vingt-huit

29 vingt-neuf

Use **et** to form tens ending in one; **vingt et un** (*twentyone*), **trente et un** (*thirty-one*), **quarante et un** (*fortyone*) and so on, and for **soixante et onze** (*seventy-one*). The exceptions are **quatre-vingt-un** (*eighty-one*) and **quatre-vingt-onze** (*ninety-one*).

30 trente

31 trente et un(e) **40** quarante

42 quarante-deux

50 cinquante

53 cinquante-trois

60 soixante

64 soixante-quatre

70 soixante-dix

71 soixante et onze

75 soixante-quinze

80 quatre-vingts

81 quatre-vingt-un(e)

90 quatre-vingt-dix

91 quatre-vingt-onze

Just as the word for *one* can be **un** or **une**, the words for *twenty-one*, *thirty-one*, *forty-one* and so on also change. The masculine forms **vingt et un**, **trente et un** and so forth become **vingt et une**, **trente et une**

and so on in the feminine.

twenty-one to sixty-nine

Tu as quel âge? – J’ai **vingt et un** ans.

How old are you? – I’m **twenty-**

Il y avait **trente et un** étudiants dans la classe.

There were **thirty-one** students in the class.

Il y a **vingt et une** femmes dans ce service.

There are **twenty-one** women in this department.
one.

Il y a **trente et un** jours en janvier.

There are **thirty-one** days in January.

Il y aura **cinquante et une** personnes dans le groupe. There’ll be **fty-one** people in the group.

When **quatre-vingts** (*eighty*) is on its own, or when it is not followed by any other number, it is spelt with an **–s** at the end. When it is followed by another number, as in **quatre-vingt-un**, **quatre-vingt-deux**, **quatre-vingt-huit** and so on (*eighty-one*, *eighty-two*, *eighty-eight* and so on), the **–s** is dropped. The **–s** at the end of **quatre-vingts** is pronounced like a “z” when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel, for instance in **quatre-vingts ans**, **quatre-vingts euros** and so on. **eighty**

Le billet coûte **quatre-vingt-neuf** euros. The ticket costs **eighty-nine** euros.

Mon grand-père vient d'avoir **quatre-vingts** ans. My grandad has just turned **eighty**.

BON À SAVOIR!

French speakers tend to read telephone numbers in tens where possible, so when saying 08 13 76 89 98, you'd say **zéro huit, treize, soixante-seize, quatre-vingt-neuf, quatre-vingt-dix-huit** (*o-eight, thirteen, seventy-six, eighty-nine, ninety-eight*).

Remember that **soixante-dix** (*seventy* – literally *sixtyten*) and **quatre-vingt-dix** (*ninety* – literally *eighty-ten*) work differently from the other tens. Logically enough, you have to start from ten when counting up, so that *seventy-one* is **soixante et onze**, *seventy-two* is **soixante-douze** and so on. The same applies to **quatre-vingt-dix** (*ninety*).

seventies and nineties

Il est né en **soixante-dix-sept**. He was born in **seventy-seven**.

Soixante-quinze est le numéro du département de Paris. **Seventy-five** is the département number of Paris. Les bleus ont gagné la coupe du

The French national team won the football World Cup in **quatre-vingt-dix-huit**. **ninety-eight**.

BON À SAVOIR!

Just as in English, you can name a year by the last two digits, for example, **quatre-vingt-dix-huit** ('98). It doesn't apply to the noughties, however, so for '06 you would say **deux mille six** (*two thousand and six*).

100	cent
101	cent un(e)
150	cent cinquante
200	deux cents
300	trois cent(s)
400	quatre cent(s)
500	cinq cent(s)
600	six cent(s)
700	sept cent(s)
800	huit cent(s)
900	neuf cent(s)

cent (*one hundred*) takes an **-s** when it is preceded by a number and when no number follows it, for example **deux cents** (*two hundred*). When it is followed by another number, as in **deux cent un** (*two hundred and one*), the **-s** is dropped.

hundred

Il y a **cent** centimes dans un euro. There are **one hundred** cents in euro. a euro.

Vous avez *Les Cent un dalmatiens* Do you have **One hundred and one** *dalmatians* on DVD? **one dalmatians** on DVD?

Ça coûte **cent cinquante** euros. It costs euros. **one hundred and fifty**

Il doit y avoir plus de **deux cents** There must be over **two hundred** personnes. people.

Il y avait à peu près **cinq cent** There were around **ve hundred cinquante** employés dans le **and fty** employees in the bâtiment. building.

BON À SAVOIR!

Don't translate the *and* in *one hundred and one, one hundred and two, one hundred and twenty* and so on in French. Just give **cent, deux cents, cinq cents** and so on, followed immediately by the other number.

In French, a space rather than a comma is used to separate thousands and millions.

1 000	mille
1 001	mille un(e)
1 020	mille vingt
1 150	mille cent cinquante
2 000	deux mille
2 500	deux mille cinq cents
3 400	trois mille quatre cents
100 000	cent mille

one thousand to one hundred thousand

Cette ville existe depuis plus de **mille** ans. **a thousand** years. There's been a town here for over

Ils se sont mariés en **deux mille** They got married in **two deux. thousand and two.**

Combien font **cent mille** euros en livres?

How much is **one hundred thousand** euros in pounds?

Ils vont payer **deux cent six mille** livres pour **fty-six thousand** pounds for leur nouvelle maison. their new house.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that **mille** (*thousand*) doesn't take an **-s** in the plural.

1 000 000

un million

1 000 000 000

mille millions

1 000 000 000 000

un milliard

To talk about a million or a billion things, you use **un million de** and **un milliard de**.

one million to one billion

Il a gagné **un million de** livres à la loterie. He won **a million** pounds on the lottery.

Le gouvernement a déjà dépensé **deux milliards de** livres dans ce projet. The government has already **deux billion** pounds spent **two billion** pounds on projet.this project.

In French, a decimal **virgule** (*comma*) is used rather than a decimal point.

...**point**... zéro **virgule** cinq (0,5) nought **point** ve (0.5)

quatre-vingt-dix-neuf (99,9) **virgule** neuf ninety-nine **point** nine

(99.9) six **virgule** quatre-vingt-neuf (6,89) six **point** eighty-nine (6.89)

Ils ont augmenté les taux d'intérêt à They've put interest rates up to
quatre **virgule** cinq pour cent. four **point** ve per cent.
(4,5%) (4.5%)

To read prices that include both euros and cents, put **euros** in the middle between the euro and the cent gures. The word **centimes** is optional.

euros and cents

Ça fera **dix-huit euros quatrevingt-dix-neuf centimes**. (18,99 €)

That'll be **eighteen euros and ninety-nine cents**. (€18.99)

Ça m'a coûté **soixante-cinq euros** It cost me **sixty- ve euros vingt**. (65€20) **twenty**. (€65.20)

BON À SAVOIR!

When you write prices in gures in French, you put the euro symbol after the gure or instead of the comma. Note that although both euros and dollars are divided into cents in

English, in French euro cents are mostly called **centimes d'euros**, while dollar cents are **cents**.

kilos and grams

Il me faut **un kilo de** pommes de terre.

I need **a kilo of** potatoes.

Je voudrais **deux cents grammes de** viande hachée.

I'd like **two hundred grams of** mince.

Je peux avoir **une livre de** tomates?

Can I have **half a kilo of** tomatoes?

BON À SAVOIR!

The feminine word **une livre** is used to mean *half a kilo*. It can also mean a *pound sterling*. The masculine word **un livre** means *a book*.

litres

À combien est carburant?
much is **a litre of** petrol?

le litre de How

Il faut **un demi-litre de** lait pour cette recette. You need **half a litre of** milk for this recipe.

kilometres, metres and centimetres

Il faisait du **cent quarante** l'heure. He was doing **one hundred and forty kilometres an hour.**

On est à **trente kilomètres de** Saint-Malo. We're **thirty kilometres from** Saint-Malo.

Je mesure **un mètre soixante-six** centimetres tall. I'm **one metre sixty-six** centimetres tall.

Ça fait **vingt centimètres de** long sur **dix de large.** It's **twenty centimetres long by ten wide.**

percentages

Le taux d'inflation est de **deux** **cinq pour cent.** The inflation rate is **two point five per cent.**

Cinquante-cinq pour cent ont voté **Fifty-** **ve per cent** voted no non au référendum. at the referendum. **temperature**

Les températures oscilleront entre **douze** et **quinze degrés.** The temperatures will vary between **degrees.twelve** and **fteen**

Il fait **trente degrés.**

It's **thirty degrees.**

There are times when you'll need to use numbers to show the order of things. As in English, there's another set of numbers you use for this. Unlike in English, they are never used in dates, except for **premier** (*rst*). In English we can write figures with *-st, -nd, -rd, -th* on

the end as required (*1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th* and so on). Similarly in French you write the figure followed by **er** or **re** (*feminine*) for *1st* or **e** for any other figure. These abbreviations can be given an **-s** in the plural.

1st premier, première (1^{er}, 1^{re})

2nd deuxième, second(e) (2^{ème}, 2^e)

3rd	troisième (3ème, 3e)
4th	quatrième (4ème, 4e)
5th	cinquième (5ème, 5e)
6th	sixième (6ème, 6e)
7th	septième (7ème, 7e)
8th	huitième (8ème, 8e)
9th	neuvième (9ème, 9e)
10th	dixième (10ème, 10e)
100th	centième (100ème, 100e)
1000th	millième (1000ème, 1000e)

Once you can count in French, it is very easy to form these numbers; substitute the nal **-e** with **-ième** for numbers that end with an **-e** (**onze**, **quinze**, **quarante**, **soixante** and so on). Add **-ième** onto the end of the words that end with a consonant (**trois**, **vingt**, **quatre-vingt-dix**). All you need to memorize is that **cinq** becomes **cinquième** and **neuf** becomes **neuvième**.

rst, second, third

Ils fêtent leur **premier** anniversaire de mariage aujourd'hui.

They're celebrating their **rst** wedding anniversary today.

C'est la **première** fois qu'il vient ici.

This is the **rst** time he's been here.

C'est mon **deuxième** séjour en Provence.

This is my **second** trip to Provence.

Il est arrivé **troisième** de la course.

He came **third** in the race.

1st, 2nd, 3rd

C'est la **1re** porte à droite.

It's the **1st** door on the right.

Il travaille sur la **5e** avenue.

He works on **5th** Avenue.

Il est arrivé **20e** au classement.

He's ranked **20th**.

L'HEURE – THE TIME

In French, as in English, you have to use numbers when talking about the time. Use **il est... heures** (*it's... o'clock*) to say what time it is in French.

Remember that you can't omit the word **heures** in French as you can in English with *o'clock*, apart from when you use **midi** (*midday*) or **minuit** (*midnight*).

It's...o'clock

Il est une heure.

It's one o'clock.

Il est minuit.

It's midnight.

Il est midi.

It's midday.

Il est six heures.

It's six o'clock.

Il est trois heures du matin.

It's three in the morning.

Il est quatre heures de l'après-midi.

It's four o'clock in the afternoon.

BON À SAVOIR!

You use **du matin** to talk about the early hours of the morning. For example, **deux heures du matin** is *two o'clock in the morning*.

The word *past* is usually not translated in French; the minutes follow the hours directly (**une heure cinq** – *ve past one*) except for *quarter past* and *half past* where **et** is used: **deux heures et quart** (*quarter past two*), **une heure et demie** (*half past one*) and so on.

It's...past...

Il est une heure vingt-cinq. **It's** twenty- **ve past** one.

Il est six heures cinq. **It's** **ve past** six.

Il est une heure **et** quart. **It's** quarter **past** one.

Il est cinq heures **et** demie. **It's** half **past** **ve**.

Put **moins le** before **quart** to say *quarter to*, for example, **il est minuit moins le quart** (*it's quarter to midnight*). For other times using *to*, put **moins** and the number of minutes directly after the hours, for example, **il est midi moins cinq** (*it's ve to twelve*).

It's...to...

Il est une heure **moins le** quart. **It's** quarter **to** one.

Il est une heure **moins** vingt. **It's** twenty **to** one.

Il est huit heures **moins** dix. **It's** ten **to** eight.

Il est trois heures **moins** cinq. **It's** **ve to** three.

When you're in a French-speaking country, you may need to find out what the time is or what time something is happening.

Except when asking **Quelle heure est-il?** (*What's the time?*), you'll need to ask **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*).

What time...?

à quelle heure est le prochain train **What time's** the next train pour Albi? for Albi? **à quelle heure** ça commence? **What time** does it start?

On se retrouve **à quelle heure?** **What time** shall we meet?

Quelle heure est-il? **What's the time?**

Vous avez **quelle heure?** **What time** do you make it?

To say what time something is happening at, use **à: à une heure** (*at one o'clock*), **à deux heures** (*at two o'clock*), **à trois heures et demie** (*at half past three*) and so on. To say when something is happening by, use **avant: avant une heure** (*by one o'clock*), **avant deux heures** (*by two o'clock*), **avant trois heures et demie** (*by half past three*) and so on.

at ...

Ça commence **à** sept heures. It starts **at** seven o'clock.

Le train part **à** sept heures et demie. The train leaves **at** seven thirty.

Je te vois **à** trois heures et demie. I'll see you **at** half past three.

On peut se donner rendez-vous **à** cinq heures et quart. We can arrange to meet up **at** quarter past ve.

by...

Est-ce que tu peux y être **avant** trois heures? Can you be there **by** three o'clock?

Il faut que nous ayons terminé **avant** une We must be nished **by** heure moins le quart. quarter to one. **du matin** is often used where in English we'd say *am*. **de l'après-midi** and **du soir** are used where we'd say *pm*. It is also quite common to use the 24-hour clock in French in order to distinguish between the morning and the afternoon.

at... am/pm

Je me lève à **huit heures du matin**. I get up **at eight am**.

Je rentre à la maison à **quatre heures de l'après-midi**. I go home again **at four de pm**.

Je vais au lit à **vingt-trois heures**. I go to bed **at eleven pm**.

Rendez-vous à **midi pile**. Let's meet **precisely at 12 noon**.

Nous sommes sortis **vers huit heures**. We went out **eight pm**. **at around**

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear to do with the time and numbers.

Le train de Paris part à 13h55 (treize heures cinquante-cinq). The train for Paris **heures leaves at 13:55**.

Le train de 14h15 (quatorze heures quinze) pour Strasbourg partira de la voie deux. The 14:15 train to Strasbourg will depart from platform two.

Le vol numéro 307 (trois cent sept) à destination de Londres décollera à 20h45 (vingt heures quarante cinq). Flight number 307 for London is due to take off at 20:45.

Le vol 909 (neuf cent neuf) en provenance de Paris est à l'heure. Flight 909 from Paris is on time.

Le bus arrive à Calais à 19h10 (dix-neuf heures dix). The coach gets in to Calais at 19:10.

Il doit être onze heures à peu près. It must be about eleven.

LA DURÉE – SAYING HOW LONG

If you want to say that something will happen in so many minutes' time or in so many days' time, use **dans** to mean *in*. Use **en** instead to say how long something takes or took to do.

in...

Je serai de retour **dans** vingt minutes. I'll be back **in** twenty minutes.

Elle sera ici **dans** une semaine. She'll be here **in** a week.

Il a fini l'exercice **en** seulement trois minutes. He completed the exercise **in** only three minutes.

Je peux probablement faire le travail I can probably do the job **in** **en** une heure ou deux. an hour or two.

To ask how long something lasts, use **Combien de temps...?** (*How long...?*). The verb **durer** (*to last*) is a useful one to know for asking such questions.

How long...?

Combien de temps dure le lm?

How long's the lm?

Combien de temps va durer la visite?

How long will the tour take?

Tu en as pour **combien de temps**?

How long will you be?

Combien de temps est-ce que ça va te prendre pour peindre le mur? **How long will it take you to paint the wall?**

ça va prendre combien de temps pour arriver en Grande-Bretagne? **How long will it take to get to Great Britain?**

ça prend combien de temps pour aller dans le centre? **How long does it take to get to the centre?**

If you want to say how long something takes, use **ça prend** or **ça met** (*it takes*). **It takes...**

ça prend moins de vingt minutes **It takes** minutes to walk to the town less than twenty minutes **ça prend** cinq minutes à préparer. **It takes** ve minutes to make. **ça m'a pris** deux heures pour aller **It took** me two hours to walk to à pied au village. the village.

ça met environ quarante minutes **It takes** about forty minutes **to à cuire.** cook.

Ils **mettent** longtemps à te servir **They take** a long time **to** serve ici.
you here.

LES SAISONS – THE SEASONS

The seasons in French are used in the same way as in English.

le printemps	spring
l'été	summer
l'automne	autumn
l'hiver	winter

To say *in autumn*, *in winter*, *in summer* and so on, use **en automne**, **en hiver**, **en été**, but *in spring* is **au printemps**.

in...

C'est au printemps qu'on a le meilleur temps ici.	We get the best weather here in spring .
On ne part pas camper en hiver .	We don't go camping in winter .
Ils se sont mariés en été 1999.	They got married in the summer of 1999.
Je préfère le printemps .	I like the spring best.
Je n'aime pas du tout l'hiver .	I don't like winter at all.

To clarify whether you're talking about *this summer* or *last summer*, *this winter* or *next winter*, you use **cet** (*this*) (or **ce** for **printemps**), **prochain** (*next*) and **dernier** (*last*).

this/last/next...

[Your Click Matters](#)

On va en Bretagne **cet été**.

We're going to Brittany **this summer**.

Je vais à Avoriaz **cet hiver**.

I'm going to Avoriaz **this winter**.

Il a fait assez doux **l'hiver dernier**.

It was quite mild **last winter**.

Elle va avoir son bébé **le printemps prochain**. She's expecting her baby **next spring**.

LES MOIS DE L'ANNÉE – THE MONTHS OF THE YEAR

The months of the year are always written with a small letter in French.

janvier January février February

mars March avril April

mai May juin June

juillet July août August

septembre September octobre October

novembre November décembre December

To say *in January, in February* and so on in French you use what you'd expect: **en janvier, en février**, and so forth.

in...

Mon anniversaire est **en août**. My birthday is **in August**.

On partira probablement en We'll probably go away on holiday vacances
en mai. in May.

J'ai rendu visite à des amis à I visited some friends in Perpignan
Perpignan **en septembre. in September.**

On va aller à la montagne pour We're going to go to the mountains
nos vacances **en août. for our holidays this August.**

last.../next...

Où est-ce que tu as passé tes Where did you go on holiday
vacances **en juin dernier? last June?**

J'espère aller en Amérique du Sud I'm hoping to go to South **en juillet**
prochain. America next July.

If you want to say that something is happening *at the beginning of*
or at the end of a month, you can use the expressions **début** and **n.**

Elle commence à l'université She starts university **at the**
début octobre. **beginning of** October.

Les grandes vacances The summer holidays start **at the**
commencent **n** juin. **end of** June.

Ils déménagent à **la mi-juin.** They're moving house **in the**
middle of June.

LES DATES – DATES

To ask what the date is, you can use **Quelle est la date**
d'aujourd'hui? (*What's the date today?*). When talking
about dates, French speakers use **deux** (*two*), **trois** (*three*),
quatre (*four*) and so on rather than **deuxième** (*second*),
troisième (*third*) and so on. For the *rst* of the month,
however, **premier** is used.

It's the...of...

[Your Click Matters](#)

On est le premier juillet.

It's the 1st of July.

On est le 28 décembre
aujourd'hui.

It's December **28th** today.

C'est le dix janvier demain.

Tomorrow's the tenth of
January.

C'était le 20 novembre hier.

It was 20th November
yesterday.

On est le jeudi 2 mars.

It's Thursday, **2nd** March.

BON À SAVOIR!

When writing a letter, write the date in the form **lundi 19 mars 2007**.

To say what date something is happening or happened on, use **le** before the number. **on the...of...**

Il est né **le quatorze février** 1990. He was born **on the fourteenth of February**, 1990.

Il est mort **le vingt-trois avril** 1616. He died **on April the twenty-third**, 1616.

Ils prévoient de se marier **le 18 octobre** 2007. They were planning to get married **on October 18th** 2007.

Où est-ce que tu penses que tu seras **le vingt octobre**? Where do you think you'll be **on the twentieth of October**?

LES JOURS DE LA SEMAINE – LES JOURS DE LA SEMAINE The days of the week are always written with a small letter in French.

lundi Monday mardi Tuesday

mercredi Wednesday jeudi Thursday

vendredi Friday samedi Saturday

dimanche Sunday

To say what day it is, just say **on est jeudi** (*it's Thursday*), **on est samedi** (*it's Saturday*). You can also say **c'est jeudi aujourd'hui** (*today's Thursday*) and so on.

It's...

On est quel jour aujourd'hui? – **On est jeudi.**

What day's today? – **It's Thursday.**

On est bien lundi aujourd'hui?

It's Monday today, isn't it?

Super! **C'est samedi** aujourd'hui.

Great! **It's Saturday** today.

When making arrangements or saying when something happened you may want to specify the day. In French it's easy. Just use the day in question **lundi, vendredi** to mean *on Monday, on Friday* and so on.

on...

Je vais à Dublin **lundi.**

I'm going to Dublin **on Monday.**

C'est mon anniversaire **mardi.**

It's my birthday **on Tuesday.**

On les verra **mercredi.**

We'll see them **on Wednesday.**

To say that something regularly happens on a particular day use **le** and the day in question. So **le lundi** means *on Mondays*.

Le samedi on va à la gym. We go to the gym **on Saturdays**. On sort toujours **le vendredi**. We always go out **on Fridays**.

Il est toujours en retard **le lundi**. He's always late in **on Mondays**.

If you want to specify the time of day, add **matin** (*morning*), **après-midi** (*afternoon*) or **soir** (*evening, night*) after the day.

on... morning/afternoon/evening/night

Je vais chez le garagiste **mardi** I'm going to the garage **on**

matin.

Tuesday morning.

Je te verrai **vendredi après-midi.**

I'll see you **on Friday afternoon.**

Il y avait un bon lm à la télévision **dimanche soir.**

There was a good lm on television **on Sunday evening.**

Qu'est-ce que tu fais **samedi soir?**

What are you doing on **Saturday night?**

You may want to say *every Monday, every Sunday* and so on. In French, you say **tous les lundis**, **tous les dimanches** and so forth.

every...

On l'appelle **tous les lundis.**

We ring her **every Monday.**

Il joue au golf **tous les samedis.**

He plays golf **every Saturday.**

Je les voyais **tous les vendredis**. I used to see them **every Friday**. On fait le ménage **tous les** We do the cleaning **every dimanches matin**. **Sunday morning**.

You may want to say that you do something every other day, week and so on. To say every other use **un... sur deux**.

every other...

Il a les enfants **un week-end** He has the children **every other sur deux**. **weekend**.

On joue au foot **un samedi sur** We play football **every other deux**. **Saturday**.

You can use **ce** (*this*), **dernier** (*last*) and **prochain** (*next*) to specify a day in particular. You can also use the day of the week on its own, which is an implicit way of saying **ce** (*this*).

this/next/last...

C'est notre anniversaire de mariage **vendredi**. **this Friday**.

It's our wedding anniversary **ce**

Je pars en vacances **mardi**.

I'm going on holiday **this Tuesday**.

Je t'ai envoyé les photos par e-mail **vendredi dernier**.

I emailed you the photos **last Friday**.

Est-ce que **vendredi prochain** te conviendrait?

Would **next Friday** suit you?

Vendredi de la semaine prochaine, It's my birthday **on Friday** c'est mon anniversaire. **week**.

On a décidé de se voir **vendredi de** We've arranged to meet up **a la**
semaine prochaine. **week on Friday.**

If you want to ask what day something is happening, use
Quel jour...? (*What day...?*). **What day...?**

La réunion est – Mardi.**quel jour? What day's** the meeting? – Tuesday.

Tu sais **quel jour** il vient? Do you know **what day** he's coming? – – Il vient
mercredi. He's coming on Wednesday.

Tu y es allé **quel jour?** – **Which day** did you go there? – Mardi je
crois. Tuesday, I think.

If you want to talk about the past, the present or the future, you
can use a number of phrases in French.

yesterday

hier

yesterday

hier matin

yesterday morning

hier après-midi

yesterday afternoon

hier soir

yesterday evening, last night

la nuit dernière

last night (*at night-time*)

avant-hier

the day before yesterday

Michael est venu me voir
hier.

Michael came to see me **yesterday.**

Béatrice a appelé
avanthier. today

Béatrice rang up **the day before
yesterday.**

aujourd'hui

today

On est mardi **aujourd'hui.**

Today's Tuesday.

tomorrow

demain

tomorrow

demain matin

tomorrow morning

demain soir

tomorrow evening, tomorrow
night

après-demain

the day after tomorrow

On est mercredi **demain.**

Tomorrow will be Wednesday.

Il faut que je me lève tôt
demain matin.

I've got to be up early **tomorrow
morning.**

On va à une fête **demain soir.**

We're going to a party **tomorrow
night.**

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that the English word *night* may be translated by **la soirée** or **le soir** (*evening*) and **la nuit** (*night-time*) in French.

To say that something happened a certain length of time ago, use **il y a** followed by the period of time in question.

...ago

Elle m'a appelé **il y a une semaine**. She called me **a week ago**.

Ils ont emménagé dans leur maison **il y a une dizaine de jours**. They moved into their house **some ten days ago**.

Il est né **il y a trois ans**. He was born **three years ago**.

One way to talk about how long you've been doing something is to use **cela fait** (or, more informally, **ça fait**) followed by the length of time, the word **que** and the verb in the present tense. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

for...

Cela fait dix mois que nous vivons ici. We've been living here **for ten months**.

Ça fait dix ans qu'ils sont mariés. They've been married **for ten years**.

Ça fait une semaine que je ne l'ai vue. I haven't seen her **for a week**.

You can also use **depuis** (*for*) with a verb in the present tense to say how long something has been happening. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#). **for...**

Il pleut **depuis** trois jours. It's been raining **for** three days
Je ne les ai pas vus **depuis** trois I haven't seen them **for** three semaines. weeks.

Ils ne se sont pas parlé **depuis** They haven't spoken to each other **des**
mois. **for** months.

J'attends ici **depuis** des heures. I've been waiting here **for** hours.

L'ALPHABET – THE ALPHABET

When you're in a French-speaking country, you may well need to spell something out in French. French letters are pronounced approximately as shown in the list below. The main difference between the English alphabet and the French one is that French uses accents on vowels (**é, à, û, ë**, etc) and a cedilla on the "c" (**ç**).

A	ah
B	bay
C	say
D	day
E	uh
F	e
G	jay

H ash

I ee

J jee

K kah

L el

M em

N en

O o

P pay

Q ku

R err

S ess

T tay

U u

V vay

doobluhvay (pronounced like the *v* in *vacancy* in **le wagon** and

W pronounced as in English in **le web**, **le week-end** and other English loanwords) X

eeks

Y ee grayk Z

zayd

BON À SAVOIR!

All letters are masculine if French. So you would say **ça s'écrit avec un P** (*it's spelt with a P*).

LISTEN OUT FOR

Here are some key phrases you may hear when spelling words out.

Comment ça s'écrit?

How do you spell it?

Est-ce que vous pouvez l'épeler?

Can you spell that for me?

Ça s'écrit G-A-U-T-I-E-R.

That's G-A-U-T-I-E-R.

Je vous l'épelle?

Shall I spell it for you?

ça s'écrit avec un B.

It's spelt with a B.

B comme Bordeaux.

B for Bordeaux.

Moreau, avec un M majuscule.

That's Moreau with a capital M.

ça s'écrit avec deux F.

It's spelt with a double F.

Avec un L ou deux?

Is that with one L or two?

ça devrait être en majuscules.

That should be in capitals.

C'est tout en minuscules.

It's all in small letters.

Comment est-ce qu'on prononce 'ch'?

How do you say 'ch'?

Est-ce que vous pouvez répéter, s'ilvous plaît? Please can you repeat that?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Giftbooks4u.com

[Your Click Matters](#)

Interesting days and dates

- The French national holiday (**la fête nationale**), known as *Bastille Day* in English, is the 14th of July. French people simply call it **le quatorze juillet**.
- In Belgium, Switzerland, Quebec and in some parts of France, many people don't use **soixante-dix** (70), **quatre-vingts** (80) and **quatre-vingt-dix** (90) but **septante**, **octante** or **huitante**, and **nonante** instead.
- New Year's Eve, **le 31 décembre**, is also called **la SaintSylvestre** in France. New Year's Day is **le premier de l'An**.
- In French-speaking countries the dates of famous events are sometimes commemorated in street names. For example you could find in many towns **l'avenue du 11 novembre**.
- You might encounter the word **tantôt**, which is sometimes very confusing even for French speakers! It may mean *soon, a little earlier* or *a little later*, and *afternoon*, depending on whether you are in Canada, Belgium or a certain part of France.
- Most Christian names are associated with a Saint's day in French. If it's your Saint's day, people will wish you **Bonne fête!** (*Happy Saint's Day!*). As part of the weather forecast on most TV channels, the presenter reminds the viewers which Saint you are celebrating the following day by saying **Bonne fête à tous les Matthieu** (*Happy Saint's Day to all Matthews*) or whatever name it may be.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Bon, résumons...** – So, to
sum up...

This unit gives you quick access to all the important French structures that you'll have learned in the individual units. They are grouped by function to help you find what you're looking for.

CONTENTS

Apologizing

Asking for and giving explanations

Asking for information

[Your Click Matters](#)

Asking for permission

Asking for things

Complaining

Describing people and things

Explaining a problem

Expressing opinions

Making suggestions

Saying what's happened

Saying what you have to do

Saying what you like, dislike, prefer

Saying what you want to do

Talking about your plans

APOLOGIZING

There are several ways you can say *sorry* in French. You can say **excuse-moi** to someone you call **tu** and **excusez-moi** to someone you call **vous**. Alternatively, you can just say **pardon**, especially if you want to get past someone or if you've bumped into them.

Excuse-moi...

Excuse-moi, je ne savais pas.

Sorry, I didn't know.

Excusez-moi, je me suis trompé de numéro.

Sorry, I've dialled the wrong number.

Excusez-moi de ne pas vous avoir
prévenus avant.

Sorry for not letting you
know sooner.

Pardon

Pardon! Je peux passer?

Sorry! Can I get past?

Pardon! Je t'ai fait mal?

Sorry! Did I hurt you?

Another way to say *I'm sorry* is to use **je suis désolé** (or for a woman **je suis désolée**). You can use **je suis désolé** not only when you're apologizing but also when you're sympathizing with someone. **Je suis désolé**

Je suis vraiment **désolé**.

I'm truly **sorry**.

Je suis désolée de ne pas t'avoir
rappelé plus tôt.

I'm sorry I didn't call you
back earlier.

Je suis désolé pour ce qu'il s'est
passé.

I'm sorry about what
happened.

ASKING FOR AND GIVING EXPLANATIONS

Use **Pourquoi (est-ce que)...**? (*Why...?*) when asking for an explanation. Use **parce que** (*because*) when giving an explanation.

Pourquoi...?

Pourquoi est-ce que vous riez?

Why are you laughing?

Pourquoi tu ne veux pas venir
nous? with us?

Why don't you want to come avec

Pourquoi pas?

Why not?

parce que...

Je ne t'en ai pas parlé **parce que je** I didn't tell you **because I ne voulais pas t'inquiéter.** didn't want to worry you.

J'ai dû partir tôt **parce que j'avais** I had to leave early **because I** une réunion. had a meeting.

ASKING FOR INFORMATION

When you're asking for information you will need to use question words, for example, **Qu'est-ce que...?** (*What...?*), **Quel...?** (*Which...?*), **Quand...?** (*When...?*), **Où...?** (*Where...?*) and so on.

Qu'est-ce que...?

Qu'est-ce que c'est?

What is it?

Qu'est-ce que tu fais dans la vie?

What do you do for a living?

Qu'est-ce qu'il a dit?

What did he say?

Qu'est-ce qui passe au cinéma en ce moment?

What's on at the cinema at the moment?

Quel est...?

Quel est le numéro de l'agence immobilière?

What's the number of the letting agency?

Quels sont vos tarifs?

What are your rates?

Quelle heure est-il?

What time is it?

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to use **quel** for masculine nouns and **quelle** for feminine nouns.

Quand est-ce que...?

Quand est-ce que tu viens dîner à la maison? **When** are you coming around for dinner?

Quand est-ce que vous vous mariez? **When** are you getting married?

Quand est le prochain vol pour Londres? **When** is the next flight to London?

Où...?

Où est le commissariat de police? **Where's** the police station?

Où sont les toilettes? **Where** are the toilets?

Où est-ce que je dois signer? **Where** do I need to sign?

Où se trouve la mairie? **Where's** the town hall?

To ask what time something is due to happen, use **À quelle heure...?** (*What time...?*). **À quelle heure...?**

À quelle heure ferme le musée? **What time** does the museum close?

À quelle heure commence le film? **What time** does the film start? **À quelle heure est-ce que** tu vas partir? **What time** are you thinking of going?

You use either **Est-ce qu'il y a...?** or **Il y a...?** for both *Is there...?* and *Are there...?*

Est-ce qu'il y a...?

Est-ce qu'il y a une boulangerie dans le quartier? **Is there** a baker's in the quartier?
area?

Est-ce qu'il y a des noix dans ce gâteau? **Are there** cake? any nuts in this

Il y a un menu pour enfants? **Is there** menu? a children's

To ask how you do something or what something is like, use
Comment...?

Comment...?

Comment ça va? **How** are you?

Comment on fait pour avoir des billets? **How** do you get tickets?

C'est **comment** l'Ardèche? **What's** the Ardèche **like**? **Comment** vous
appelez-vous? **What's** your name?

To ask *how much* or *how many*, use a phrase containing
combien. **Combien...?**

Combien coûte un billet pour Lyon? **How much is** Lyons? a ticket to

Il reste combien d'oignons? **How many onions are left?**

On met **combien de temps** pour aller à Nice? **How long** does it take to get aller à
Nice? to Nice?

ASKING FOR PERMISSION

The simplest way to ask for permission to do something is by using **Est-ce que je peux...?** (*Can I...?*) or **Est-ce que je pourrais...?** (*Could I...?*), followed by a verb in the infinitive. **peux** and **pourrais** come from the verb **pouvoir** (*to be able*). For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#). **Est-ce que je peux...?**

Est-ce que je peux téléphoner?
phone?

utiliser le **Can I** use the

Je peux vous payer en deux fois? **Can I** instalments? pay you in two

Est-ce que je pourrais...?

Est-ce que je pourrais rester une
semaine de plus?

Could I stay for another
week?

Je pourrais garer ma voiture ici?

Could I park my car
here?

Alternatively you can use **Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...?** (*Do you mind if...?*) followed by a verb in the present tense. For more information on the present, see [page 272](#).

Est-ce que ça vous dérange si...? Est-ce que ça vous dérange si je fume?

Est-ce que ça vous dérange si j'invite quelques amis ce soir?

Ça vous dérange si j'ouvre la fenêtre?

Do you mind if I smoke?

Do you mind if I have a few friends over tonight?

Do you mind if I open the window?

ASKING FOR THINGS

To ask for things in French you can simply name what you want and say **s'il vous plaît** (*please*).

Un..., s'il vous plaît

Unplaît aller simple pour Lille, . **s'il vous A** single to Lille, **please**.

Une limonade, **s'il vous plaît**.

A lemonade, **please**.

Deux baguettes **et quatre** **Two** baguettes **and four** croissants, **s'il vous plaît**. croissants, **please**.

To say what you'd like or what you want, you can use **je voudrais** (*I'd like*), which comes from the verb **vouloir**. For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

Je voudrais...

Je voudrais un carnet de timbres, s'il **I'd like** a book of stamps, vous plaît. please.

Je voudrais deux entrées pour **I'd like** two tickets for the l'exposition, s'il vous plaît. exhibition, please.

On voudrait un appartement avec **We'd like** a at with a sea vue sur la mer. view.

Another way of asking whether something is available is to use **Est-ce que vous avez...?** (*Do you have...?*). **avez** comes from the verb **avoir** (*to have*). For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#). **Est-ce que vous avez...?**

Est-ce que vous avez solaire? de la crème **Do you have** sunscreen?

Vous avez une adresse électronique? **Do you have** address? an email

To say what you're looking for you can use **je cherche** (*I'm looking for*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **chercher**, see [page 269](#).

Je cherche...

Je cherche un endroit pour **I'm looking for** somewhere to camper. camp.

Je cherche un restaurant **I'm looking for** a vegetarian végétarien. restaurant.

To ask someone if they can do something for you, use **Est-ce que vous pouvez...?** (*Can you...?*) or **Est-ce que vous pourriez...?** (*Could you...?*) and then the verb in the infinitive.

pouvez and **pourriez** come from the verb **pouvoir** (*to be able*). For more information on **pouvoir**, see [page 284](#).

Est-ce que vous pouvez...?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me donner un **Can you** give me a carrier sac, s'il vous plaît? bag, please?

Est-ce que vous pouvez me **Can you** photocopy the photocopier le plan? map for me?

Vous pouvez nous apporter la carte des **Can you** bring us the wine vins? list?

Est-ce que vous pourriez...?

Est-ce que vous pourriez déplacer votre **Could you** move your voiture, s'il vous plaît? car, please?

Vous pourriez nous donner un reçu? **Could you** receipt? give us a

You can use **donnez-moi** (or the **tu** form **donne-moi**) followed by **s'il vous plaît** to mean *Can I have..., please?* especially when asking for something at a counter or when asking someone to pass you something.

Donnez-moi...

Donnez-moi une baguette, s'il vous **Can I have** a baguette, plaît. please?

Donne-moi ton stylo, s'il te plaît. **Can I have** please? your pen,

COMPLAINING

If you need to complain, you may want to use **il y a** and **il n'y a pas de** to talk about what there is and what there isn't.

Both *there is* and *there are* are **il y a** in French.

Il y a...

Il y a des cafards dans l'appartement.

There are cockroaches in the at.

Il n'y a pas d'eau chaude.

There isn't any hot water.

You can also use **il n'y a pas assez de** to say that there isn't enough of something.

Il n'y a pas assez de...

Il n'y a pas assez de renseignements. information. **There isn't enough**

Il n'y a pas assez de chaises.

There aren't enough chairs.

When something has run out, you can use **il ne reste plus de**.

Il ne reste plus de...

Il ne reste plus de papier toilette **There isn't any** toilet paper **left** chez les dames. in the ladies.

Il ne reste plus de dépliants.

There aren't any leaflets **left**.

DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

When you're describing people or things, use **il est** (*he is*), or **elle est** (*she is*) or **c'est** (*it is*) followed by an adjective.

Il est...

[Your Click Matters](#)

Il est très grand.

He's very tall.

Elle est sympa.

She's nice.

Elle n'est pas très vieille.

She's not very old.

C'est...

C'est beau.

It's beautiful.

C'est loin.

It's a long way away.

C'est vraiment lourd.

It's really heavy.

avoir is used to talk about characteristics that people have. Remember that it's also used with **ans** (*years*) to talk about ages.

Il a...

Il a les cheveux gris.

He's got grey hair.

Elle a les yeux bleus.

She's got blue eyes.

Il a le teint mat.

He has a dark complexion.

J'ai vingt-deux **ans**.

I'm twenty two.

To say what someone is wearing, use **il porte** or **elle porte**.

Elle porte...

Elle porte une robe verte.

She's wearing a green dress.

Il porte un jean.

He's wearing jeans.

Il porte des baskets.

He's wearing trainers.

EXPLAINING A PROBLEM

To explain what the problem is, use **il y a** to say both *there is* and *there are*.

Il y a...

Il y a un bruit bizarre.

There's a strange noise.

Il n'y a pas de serviettes dans ma chambre. **There aren't** any towels in my room.

Il y a eu un accident.

There's been an accident.

BON À SAVOIR!

The last example uses **il y a** with the past tense of the verb **avoir** (*to have*). For more information on **avoir**, see [page 280](#).

To say what you can't do, use **je n'arrive pas à** (*I can't*) followed by the infinitive. **Je n'arrive pas à...**

Je n'arrive pas à voiture. démarrer la

I can't get the car to start.

Je n'arrive pas à joindre ma famille. **I can't** family. get in touch with my

On n'arrive pas à faire marcher le chauffage. **We can't** get the heating to work.

You use **je ne sais pas...** instead to mean *I can't* when you want to say *I don't know how to*.

Je ne sais pas...

Je ne sais pas bien parler français. **I can't** speak French very well. **Il ne sait pas** conduire. **He can't** drive.

EXPRESSING OPINIONS

Use **je pense que**, **je trouve que** and **je crois que** to mean / *think*. When these phrases are used in the negative, for example, **je ne pense pas que**, the verb that follows must be in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Je pense que...

Je pense que tu devrais réserver à l'avance. **I think** you should book in advance.

Je pense qu'il va pleuvoir. **I think** it's going to rain.

Je ne pense pas que ce soit une bonne idée. **I don't think** it's a good idea.

Qu'est-ce que tu en penses? Je trouve que... **What do you think?**

Je trouve que c'est un peu cher. **I think** it's a bit dear.

Je trouve que tu as raison. **I think** you're right.

Je ne trouve pas que ce soit un très bon film. **I don't think** it's a very good film.

Je crois que...

Je crois que tu te fais du souci pour rien. **I think** you're worrying about nothing.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Vous croyez que ça en vaut la peine? Do you think it's worth it?

Je ne crois pas qu'on puisse venir. I don't think we're going to be able to make it.

Use **je suis d'accord** to say that you agree and **je ne suis pas d'accord** to say that you disagree.

Je suis d'accord...

Je suis d'accord avec toi.

I agree with you.

Nous sommes tous les deux d'accord.

We both agree.

Je ne suis absolument pas d'accord.

I completely disagree.

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

Use **on pourrait** (*we could*) if you want to suggest doing something with someone.

On pourrait...

On pourrait aller au cinéma. We could go to the cinema. On pourrait s'asseoir en terrasse. We could sit outside.

If you want to suggest to someone that you do something, you can turn a simple sentence into a suggestion by raising the tone of your voice and making it a question.

On...?

On prend un verre?

Shall we have a drink?

On regarde le menu?

Shall we have a look at the menu?

Pourquoi pas...? (or **Pourquoi ne pas...?** if you want to sound more formal) can be used to mean *Why not...?*

Pourquoi pas...?

Pourquoi pas demander à un **Why not** ask a shop vendeur?
assistant?

Pourquoi ne pas s'arrêter à Paris au **Why not** stop in Paris on the
passage? way?

You can also use **Et si...?** followed by the verb in the imperfect tense to suggest doing something. For more information on the imperfect, see [page 272](#).

Et si...?

Et si on passait la nuit ici?

How about spending the night here?

Et si on y allait en bateau? **How about** going there by ferry? **Et si** je demandais à l'agent de **How about if** I asked the police police? o
cer?

Et si on louait une voiture?

How about hiring a car?

You can ask someone if they'd like to do something using **Est-ce que tu veux...?** or **Est-ce que vous voulez...?** (*Would you like...?*) with the infinitive. **veux** and **voulez** come from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

Est-ce que tu veux...?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Est-ce que tu veux venir prendre **Would you like to** come and un verre?
have a drink?

Est-ce que vous voulez voir la **Would you like to** see the cathédrale?
cathedral?

To ask someone if they fancy something, you can use **Ça te dit de...?** (*Do you fancy...?*) or the **vous** form **Ça vous dit de...?**.

Ça te dit de...?

Ça te dit de manger une glace? **Do you fancy** an ice cream? **Ça vous dit d'aller** prendre un **Do you fancy** going for a café? **Ça vous dit d'aller** prendre un **Do you fancy** going for a café? coffee?

To offer to do something, you can use **laissez-moi** (or the **tu** form **laisse-moi**) to mean *let me*. **Laissez-moi...**

Laissez-moi vous aider. **Let me** help you.

Laisse-moi porter ta valise. **Let me** carry your suitcase.

Use **Ça ne vous dérange pas que...?** followed by the subjunctive to ask *Is it OK with you if...?*. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Ça ne vous dérange pas que...?

Ça ne vous dérange pas que je **Is it OK with you if I** come repasse
demain? back tomorrow?

Ça ne te dérange pas que je **Is it OK with you if I** call you t'appelle chez
toi? at home?

If you want to say what would suit you better, you can use **ça m'arrangerait...** (...*would be better for me*).

Ça m'arrangerait...

Ça m'arrangerait vendredi.

Friday **would be better for me.**

Ça m'arrangerait de vous
bas. you there.

It would suit me better to meet retrouver là-

SAYING WHAT'S HAPPENED

To talk about what has happened, you use the past tense with **avoir** (*to have*) or **être** (*to be*) and the past participle (such as *been, given, travelled*). You can find out more about the past tense on [page 269](#).

J'ai...

J'ai eu un accident.

I've had an accident.

Nous avons vu une agression. **Je suis...**

We've witnessed a mugging.

Je suis arrivée ce matin.

I arrived this morning.

Je me suis cassé la jambe.

I've broken my leg.

Il est tombé.

He's fallen.

SAYING WHAT YOU HAVE TO DO

To say what you have to do, use **je dois** (*I must*) followed by a verb in the infinitive. **dois** is from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

Je dois...

Je dois faire le plein.

I must fill up the car.

On doit aller les chercher à l'aéroport. **We have to** pick them up from the airport.

You can also use **il faut que** followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Il faut que...

Il faut que je sois à la gare à 14h00.

I have to be at the railway station at 2 pm.

Il faut que tu confirmes la réservation. **You have to** confirm the reservation.

Il faut qu'on achète du pain. **We need to** buy some bread.

If you want to say that there is something you need to do, you can use **il faudrait que** followed by a verb in the subjunctive. For more information on the subjunctive, see [page 274](#).

Il faudrait que...

Il faudrait que je trouve une carte.

I need to find a map.

Il faudrait que je passe un coup de fil.

I need to make a phone call.

To talk about what you should do, use **je devrais** (*I should*) followed by an infinitive. **devrais** is from the verb **devoir**. For more information on **devoir**, see [page 281](#).

Je devrais...

Je devrais y aller.

I should go.

Vous devriez venir nous voir. **You should** come and see us. **On devrait** faire un peu de **We ought to** do some ménage. housework.

SAYING WHAT YOU LIKE, DISLIKE, PREFER

To say what you like, use **j'aime bien** (*I like*), which is not as strong as **j'aime** and **j'adore** (*I love*). To say what you dislike, use **je n'aime pas**. **aime** comes from the verb **aimer** (*to love*). For more information on **aimer**, see [page 275](#).

J'aime bien...

J'aime bien ce tableau.

I like this painting.

J'aime beaucoup l'Alsace.

I like Alsace **a lot**.

Est-ce que tu l'aimes? J'adore...

Do you love him?

J'adore la poésie.

I love poetry.

J'adore les lms en noir et blanc.

I love black and white movies.

Il adore cuisiner.

He loves cooking.

Je n'aime pas...

Je n'aime pas l'ail.

I don't like garlic.

Je n'aime pas du tout prendre le **I really dislike** taking the métro. underground.

To say what you prefer, use **je préfère**. To say that you prefer A to B, use **je préfère A à B**. **préfère** comes from the verb **préférer**. For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page 270](#). **Je préfère...**

Je préfère la chemise grise.

I prefer the grey shirt.

Je préfère le train **au** bus.

I prefer the train **to** the bus.

Je préfère la cuisine italienne **à la** cuisine française.

I prefer Italian cuisine **to** French cuisine.

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT TO DO

To say what you'd like to do, you can use **je voudrais** and **j'aimerais** (*I'd like*).

Je voudrais...

Je voudrais aller au Musée **I'd like to** go to the Musée d'Orsay. d'Orsay.

Je voudrais gagner plus d'argent. **I'd like to** earn more money.

Je voudrais relever mes e-mails. **I'd like to** check my emails.

J'aimerais...

J'aimerais voir le théâtre romain **I'd like to** see the Roman theatre d'Orange. in Orange.

On aimerait rester ici un peu **We'd like to** stay here a little plus. longer.

To talk about what you'd rather do, use **je préfère** and **je préférerais** from the verb **préférer** (*to prefer*). For more information on **-er** verbs like **préférer**, see [page](#)

[270](#).

Je préfère...

[Your Click Matters](#)

Je préfère partir tôt le matin.

I'd rather leave early in the morning.

Je préférerais louer un petit **I'd rather** rent a small at. appartement.

On préfère ne pas laisser les bagages dans la voiture.

We'd rather not leave the luggage in the car.

If you want to sound more assertive as to what you want or don't want, you can also use **je veux** (*I want*) from the verb **vouloir** (*to want*). For more information on **vouloir**, see [page 285](#).

Je veux...

Je veux envoyer cette lettre en **I want to** send this letter
recommandé. recorded delivery.

Je veux acheter une maison dans **I want to** buy a house in the la
région. area.

Je ne veux pas payer de **I don't want to** pay a supplément.
supplement.

TALKING ABOUT YOUR PLANS

To talk about your plans, you can use either **j'ai l'intention de** or **je compte**. They both mean *I'm planning to* and are followed by a verb in the infinitive.

J'ai l'intention de...

J'ai l'intention de passer deux **I'm planning to** spend two semaines
en Provence. weeks in Provence.

J'ai l'intention de faire construire **I'm planning to** have a house une
maison. built.

On a l'intention d'apprendre **We're planning to** learn l'espagnol. Spanish.

Je compte...

Je compte loger chez un **I'm planning to** stay with a friend. ami.

Je ne compte pas rester ici **I'm not planning to** stay here very très
longtemps. long.

On comptait aller au **We were planning to** go to the marché demain
matin. market tomorrow morning.

If you want to say what you're thinking of doing, you can use
je pense (*I'm thinking of*) or **je pensais** (*I was thinking of*)
followed by a verb in the infinitive.

Je pense...

Je pense m'acheter un lecteur **I'm thinking of** buying an MP3
MP3. player.

Je pense arriver vers cinq **I think I'll** get there at around ve heures.
pm.

Je pensais inviter Anne à **I was thinking of** inviting Anne for dîner.
dinner.

One easy way of talking about what you're going to do is to
use **je vais** (*I'm going to*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

vais comes from the verb **aller** (*to go*). For more information on **aller**, see [page 279](#).

Je vais...

Je vais appeler Sam.

I'm going to phone Sam.

Je vais envoyer une carte postale à mes parents. **I'm going to** send a postcard to my parents.

On va visiter un appartement cette semaine. **We're going to** view a flat at this week.

You can use the present tense to talk about something that you're definitely going to do. For more information on the present tense, see [page 272](#).

Je...

Je pars demain à onze heures.

I'm leaving tomorrow at eleven.

Je dîne chez Morgane ce soir. **I'm having** dinner at Morgane's tonight.

On va au Québec dans deux semaines. **We're going to** Québec in two weeks.

Elle vient la semaine prochaine. **She's coming** next week.

To talk about what you hope to do, you can use **j'espère** (*I hope* or *I'm hoping to*) followed by an infinitive, or **j'espère que** followed by a verb in the present or the future tense. For more information on **-er** verbs like **espérer**, see [page 270](#). For more information on the present and future tenses, see [page 272](#).

J'espère...

J'espère y retourner un jour. **I'm hoping** today. go back there one

J'espère qu'place.il est déjà sur **I hope** he's already there.

J'espère qu'on se reverra. **I hope** we'll see each other again.

To say what you may do, you can use **je vais peut-être...** (*I may*) followed by a verb in the infinitive.

Je vais peut-être...

Je vais peut-être organiser une soirée.

I may have a party.

Je vais peut-être prendre un verre avec Thomas ce soir.

I may go for a drink with Thomas tonight.

Elle va peut-être s'installer en France.

She may move to France permanently.

Giftbooks4u.com



Giftbooks4u.com **Je vous demande
pardon? – I beg your pardon?**

Every day we use a variety of ready-made phrases that just trip off our tongues in English, such as *take a seat, hurry up, congratulations, happy birthday, have a nice day, thanks* and *the same to you*. In this unit we'll give you all the phrases of this sort that you'll need in French, so that you can say the appropriate thing with confidence.

CONTENTS

[Hellos and goodbyes](#)

[Please and thank you](#)

[Your Click Matters](#)

Attracting someone's attention
Making sure you've understood
Checking facts
Wishing someone something
Apologizing
Reassuring someone
Opinions
Agreeing, disagreeing and declining
Congratulating someone
Reacting to good and bad news
Exclamations
Surprise
Encouraging someone
Handing someone something
Dangers and emergencies
Speaking your mind
Conversational words

HELLOS AND GOODBYES

Creating a good first impression is important, so you'll want to say *hello* to people properly. Just as in English, there are several ways of doing this in French. You can simply use the informal **salut** (*hi*) on its own. You can also use **bonjour** (*good morning or good afternoon*) or **bonsoir** (*good evening*) which can be followed by **Monsieur/Madame/Mademoiselle** if you want to sound polite.

Hello

Salut. Hi.

Bonjour. Good morning *or* afternoon. Bonsoir.

Good evening.

BON À SAVOIR!

Salut! can be used to mean both *Hi!* and *Bye!*

Goodbye

Au revoir! Goodbye!

Au revoir à tous! Goodbye everyone!

Salut! Bye!

Bonsoir! Good night!

BON À SAVOIR!

Bonsoir means both *good evening* and *good night*, so you use it both when arriving and leaving somewhere in the evening. You use **bonne nuit** (*good night*) only at bedtime.

See you...! à plus tard! See you later! à demain!

See you tomorrow!

À la prochaine! See you again! à lundi! See you on

Monday!

When you're introduced to someone, you need to know how to reply. **enchanté** or **ravi de faire votre connaissance** are used mostly in formal or business situations these days, and very often people just say **bonjour**.

How do you do?

[Your Click Matters](#)

Bonjour Madame. – Bonjour
Monsieur.

How do you do? – How do you
do?

Enchanté. – Enchanté.

Pleased to meet you. – Pleased to meet you too.

Ravi de faire votre connaissance. Pleased to meet you. – Pleased
– Moi de même. to meet you too.

You may hear French speakers using **bienvenue à** with the
name of a town and **bienvenue en** with the name of most
countries or regions.

Welcome to...!

Bienvenue!

Welcome!

Bienvenue en France!

Welcome to France!

Bienvenue à Mâcon!

Welcome to Mâcon!

Soyez les bienvenus à Poitiers!

Welcome to Poitiers!

BON À SAVOIR!

bienvenue au is used with the name of a region or country
which is masculine, and **bienvenue aux** with the name of a region
or country which is plural. **How lovely to see you!** ça fait plaisir de
te revoir! How lovely to see you again!

ça fait une éternité que je ne t'ai pasvu!

I haven't seen you for ages!

As in English, there are several ways you can ask someone how they are in French and a variety of ways to reply.

How are you?

Comment ça va? – Bien, merci et **How are you?**- Fine thanks, toi? and you?

Comment allez-vous? – Bien, merci **How are you?**- Fine thanks, et vous?and you? **ça va?** **How are you?** **ça va bien?** **How's things?**

Salut! **Quoi de neuf?**

Hi! **How's tricks?**

Comment tu te portes? I'm...

How are you feeling?

ça va bien, merci et toi?

I'm ne thanks. And you?

Pas trop mal!

Not too bad!

On fait aller!

Getting by!

ça pourrait être pire.

Can't complain.

Beaucoup mieux, merci.

A lot better, thanks.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember to use the **vous** form to people you don't know.

A knock at the door

Il y a quelqu'un?

Is anybody in?

Qui est-ce?

Who is it?

Un instant!

One moment!

Je viens!

I'm coming!

Asking someone in

Entrez!

Come in!

Après toi!

After you!

Asseyez-vous donc!

Do sit down!

Fais comme chez toi.

Make yourself at home.

BON À SAVOIR!

When inviting someone to do something in French, you can add **donc** after the verb for emphasis. This is not unlike English where we put *do* before the verb in *do start, do take a seat, do come in* and so on.

PLEASE AND THANK YOU

When requesting something from someone, you should use **s'il vous plaît** (*please*) for someone you don't know, and **s'il te plaît** (*please*) for someone you know well.

Please

Est-ce que je peux avoir un demi, **s'il vous plaît**?

Can I have half a lager, **please**?

Deux kilos d'oranges, **s'il vous plaît**.

Two kilos of oranges, **please**.

Est-ce que vous pouvez me donner l'heure, **s'il vous plaît**?

Please could you tell me the time?

Tu peux me passer la télécommande, **s'il te plaît**?

Can you give me the remote control, **please**?

Oui, **s'il vous plaît**.

Yes, **please**.

Oui, **merci**.

Yes, **please**.

BON À SAVOIR!

To say *yes, please*, you can use either **oui, s'il vous plaît** or **oui, merci**.

Thank you!

Merci!

Thanks!

Je vous remercie.

Thank you.

Merci beaucoup, Madame!

Thank you very much!

Merci beaucoup pour ta lettre.

Thank you very much for your letter.

Non, **merci**.

No, **thank you**.

BON À SAVOIR!

When you're offered something, stipulate either **oui, merci** or **non, merci**, as **merci** on its own can mean either *yes, thanks* or *no, thanks* depending on your intonation.

The commonest response to **merci** is **de rien** (*not at all*), or the more formal **je vous en prie**.

Not at all

De rien!

Not at all! *or* You're welcome!

Il n'y a pas de quoi!

Don't mention it!

Je vous en prie.

You're welcome.

Merci. – C'est moi qui vous remercie. Thank you. – No, thank you!

[Your Click Matters](#)

ATTRACTING SOMEONE'S ATTENTION

To attract someone's attention, you can use **excusez-moi** or **pardon**, ending your request with **s'il vous plaît**. You can also simply say **s'il vous plaît**.

Excuse me!

Excusez-moi!

Excuse me!

Pardon!

Excuse me, please!

Pardon, Mademoiselle!

Excuse me!

S'il vous plaît!

Excuse me, please!

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that French speakers tend to be more formal than English speakers. When trying to get someone's attention, you can add **Monsieur** (*Sir*), **Madame** (*Madam*) or **Mademoiselle** (*Miss*).

MAKING SURE YOU'VE UNDERSTOOD

Sometimes you might have problems understanding what's been said or you do not know the right words to express what you want to say in French. Here are some useful phrases to help you when this happens.

I don't understand

Excusez-moi, **je ne comprends pas**.

Sorry, **I don't understand**.

Est-ce que vous pouvez répéter, s'il vous plaît? **Je n'ai pas compris**.

Please could you repeat that? **I didn't understand**.

Excusez-moi, **je n'ai pas compris** ce que vous avez dit.

Sorry, **I didn't understand** what you said.

How do you say...?

Comment est-ce qu'on dit "driving licence" en français? **How do you say** 'driving licence' in French?

Comment ça s'appelle en français? **What's this called** in French?

Would you mind...?

Je peux vous demander de parler **Would you mind** speaking plus lentement? more slowly?

Je peux te demander de répéter ce **Would you mind** repeating que tu as dit? what you said? **What...?**

Pardon, **qu'est-ce que** vous avez dit? Sorry, **what** did you say?

Pardon, **qu'est-ce que** «couverture» **Sorry, what** does 'couverture' veut dire? mean?

CHECKING FACTS

To check your facts, you can use **n'est-ce pas?** – which is quite formal – and **non?**. They are used on the end of statements similar to the way we use *isn't it?*, *haven't you?* and so on in English. ...**isn't it?**

Vous êtes de Paris, **n'est-ce pas?**

You're from Paris, **aren't you?**

Il y a du monde, **non?**

It's busy, **isn't it?**

Vous êtes arrivés hier, **non?**

You arrived yesterday, **didn't**

you?

Tu viens, **oui ou non?**

Are you coming **or aren't you?**

BON À SAVOIR!

Adding **oui ou non?** at the end of a question corresponds to the English *or what?*. Just as in English, it is quite informal.

Another way of checking that something is right in French is to add **bien** to the question.

...isn't it?

On est **bien** lundi aujourd'hui?

Today's Monday, **isn't it?**

Tu lui as **bien** dit que c'était OK, **didn't** d'accord?
you?

Tu as **bien** les passeports?

You do have the passports, **you? don't**

You can use **vous ne trouvez pas** when addressing several people or someone you don't know well, and **tu ne trouves pas** to someone you're familiar with to say *Don't you think? ...don't you think?*

Ça lui va bien, **tu ne trouves pas?**

It suits her, **think?don't you**

Il fait froid, **vous ne trouvez pas?** It's cold, **don't you think?** **Vous ne trouvez pas que** le vin a un **Don't you think** the wine drôle de goût?
tastes funny?

WISHING SOMEONE SOMETHING

To say that you hope someone has a good time, has a good weekend or gets a good night's sleep, use **bon** before a masculine word, **bonne** before a feminine one, or **bien** after a verb. **Have a good...!**

Bon voyage!	Have a good trip!
Bon appétit!	Enjoy your meal!
Passe un bon week-end!	Have a great weekend!
Bonnes vacances!	Enjoy your holiday!
Bon rétablissement!	Get well soon!
Amuse-toi bien!	Have fun! <i>or</i> Enjoy yourself!
Dors bien!	Sleep well!
Santé!	Cheers! (<i>when drinking</i>)

When wishing someone *Happy...!*, you can use **joyeux** or **bon** with a masculine word, or **joyeuse** or **bonne** with a feminine word.

Happy...!

Joyeux Noël!	Happy Christmas!
Joyeux <i>or</i> Bon anniversaire!	Happy birthday!
Bonne année!	Happy New Year!

Bon anniversaire de mariage!

Happy wedding anniversary!

BON À SAVOIR!

Vous de même! and **à toi aussi!** (*The same to you!*) are particularly useful words socially. Use them in reply to expressions such as **Joyeux Noël!** (*Happy Christmas!*) and **Bon appétit!** (*Enjoy your meal!*) if you want to wish the other person the same thing back.

Good luck!

Bonne chance!

Good luck!

Bonne chance pour ton examen! **Good luck** in your exam! **Bonne chance**
pour ton nouveau **Good luck** in your new travail! job!

APOLOGIZING

To say *I'm sorry*, you can use **pardon** or **je m'excuse**. Alternatively, especially if you've done something more serious, you can use **je suis désolé**, or **je suis désolée** if you're a woman. If you need to get past someone, or if you bump into them, just say **pardon** or **excusez-moi** (*sorry* or *excuse me*). **I'm sorry**

Pardon.

I'm sorry.

Je m'excuse d'être en retard.

I'm sorry I'm late.

Je suis vraiment désolé!

I'm really sorry!

Je suis sincèrement désolée! I'm afraid...

I'm truly sorry!

Oui, je regrette.

I'm afraid so.

J'en ai bien peur.

I'm afraid so.

Non, je regrette.

I'm afraid not.

J'ai bien peur que non.

I'm afraid not.

REASSURING SOMEONE

If someone apologizes to you or if they tell you about something they've accidentally done, you can reassure them by saying **ce n'est pas grave** (*it doesn't matter*) or **ça ne fait rien** (*forget about it*). There are also a number of other expressions you can use.

It doesn't matter

Ce n'est pas grave.

It doesn't matter.

Ça ne fait rien.

Forget about it.

Ne t'en fais pas!

Don't worry!

Il n'y a pas de problème.

Don't worry about it.

T'inquiète pas! C'est pas grave.

Don't worry about it! It doesn't matter.

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that in spoken French, you can often omit the **ne** in a negative sentence. This will make you sound informal.

OPINIONS

To express your opinion in French, you can use **je crois**, **je pense** and **il me semble**, all of which mean *I think*.

I think so

Je crois que oui.

I think so.

Il me semble, oui.

I think so.

Je suppose que oui.

I suppose so.

J'espère. **I don't think so**

I hope so.

Je ne crois pas.

I don't think so.

Je ne pense pas.

I don't think so.

Je suppose que non.

I suppose not.

J'espère que non. **I'm not sure**

I hope not.

Je ne suis pas sûr.

I'm not sure.

Je ne suis pas certain.

I'm not sure.

Je ne sais pas.

I don't know.

Tu es sûr?

Are you sure?

BON À SAVOIR!

Remember that if you're a woman, you would say **sûre** or **certaine** instead.

I doubt it

ça m'étonnerait.

I doubt it.

Ça, j'en doute. **I don't mind**

I doubt it.

Ça m'est égal.

I don't mind.

Ça ne me fait rien.

I don't mind.

Peu importe.

It's all the same to me.

AGREEING, DISAGREEING AND DECLINING

Remember that there are two words to say yes in French: **oui** and **si**. **oui** is the normal word for yes and **si** is used to mean yes to contradict a negative statement or question such as **Tu ne veux pas manger? – Si!** (*Don't you want to eat? – Yes, I do!*).

Yes

Oui.

Yes.

Bien sûr que oui.

Yes, of course.

Tu n'as pas encore ni? – Si! Aren't you nished yet? – Yes, I am!

C'est vrai.

That's true.

Tu as raison.

You're right.

Je suis tout à fait d'accord.

I totally agree.

If someone asks you to do something, particularly useful phrases are **D'accord!** (*OK!*), **Bien sûr!** (*Of course!*) or **Sans problème!** (*No problem!*). **OK!**

D'accord!

OK!

Bon, d'accord.

OK, then.

Entendu! **Of course**

OK! or Agreed!

Bien sûr!

Of course!

Oui, bien sûr. Yes, of course.

Tu m'aides? – Bien sûr! Will you help me? – Of course I will!

Sans problème! No problem.

To disagree with someone or refuse something, you can use **non**, or a number of other very common phrases.

No

Non. No.

Bien sûr que non. Of course not.

Ce n'est pas vrai. That's not true.

Eh bien, tu as tort. Well, you're wrong.

Je ne suis pas d'accord du tout. I don't agree at all.

There are several words you can use with **je ne peux pas** (*I can't*) to say that you will have to decline to do something, for example **franchement** (*honestly*), **sincèrement** (*truly*), **malheureusement** (*unfortunately*).

I can't

J'aimerais bien, mais I'd like to but unfortunately malheureusement **je ne peux pas. I can't.**

Non, franchement, **je ne peux pas.** No, I honestly **can't.**

J'ai bien peur de **ne pas pouvoir.** I'm afraid **I can't.**

Je suis sincèrement désolé, mais **je ne** I'm truly sorry, but **I won't vais pas pouvoir** venir. **be able to** make it.

If you don't want to commit yourself, **peut-être** is the easiest way of saying *perhaps* in French.

Perhaps

Peut-être.

Perhaps.

C'est possible.

Possibly.

Tu as peut-être raison. You may be right. ça se pourrait. It could well be. ça dépend. It depends. On verra. We'll see.

CONGRATULATING SOMEONE

To congratulate someone on their success, there are lots of useful phrases you can use such as **Félicitations!** (*Congratulations!*) and **Bravo!** (*Well done!*).

Congratulations!

Félicitations!

Congratulations!

Bravo!

Well done!

Bravo pour ta promotion!

Congratulations promotion! on your

Félicitations pour ton succès aux **Congratulations** on passing examens!
your exams!

Bravo, au fait!

Well done, by the way!

REACTING TO GOOD AND BAD NEWS

There are a number of very useful expressions to use when someone tells you that they're well or that something good has happened to them. **Glad to hear it**

Je suis content de l'apprendre.	That's good to hear.
Je suis bien contente pour toi!	I'm really pleased for you!
C'est une très bonne nouvelle.	That's very good news.
C'est une excellente nouvelle!	What wonderful news!
C'est formidable!	How wonderful!
C'est génial!	That's great!
Génial!	Fantastic!

BON À SAVOIR!

bien is often put in front of adjectives for emphasis, a bit like *really*, for example, **je suis bien content** (*I'm really pleased*), **je suis bien embêté** (*I really don't know what to do*).

To say you're sorry about something bad that's happened, you can use **je suis désolé** (*I'm sorry*).

I'm sorry

Je suis désolé.

I'm sorry.

Je suis vraiment désolé pour ta tante. **I'm really sorry** to hear tante. about your aunt.

On est sincèrement désolés pour ce qui s'est passé. **We're very sorry about** what happened.

There are lots of useful expressions which mean *things could be worse* or *it's not that bad*, for example, **ce n'est pas si grave que ça** (*it's not as bad as all that*).

It's not as bad as all that

Ce n'est pas si grave que ça.

It's not as bad as all that.

Ne te laisse pas abattre! ça aurait pu pire. worse.

Cheer up! It could have been être

Il y a pire.

Things could be worse.

EXCLAMATIONS

In English we often use *What a...!* when saying how something affects us or how we feel about it. In French, you can use **Quel(le)...!** before a noun and **Qu'est-ce que...!** when there is a verb.

What a...!

Quelle peur!

What a fright!

Quel dommage!

What a shame!

Quelle malchance!

What bad luck!

Quelle surprise, dis donc!

What a surprise!

Dites donc! **Quel** beau bâtiment!

What a beautiful building!

BON À SAVOIR!

The English *a* is not translated into French in expressions like these.

What a...!

Qu'est-ce que je suis bête!

What an idiot I am!

Qu'est-ce que le paysage est beau!

What a beautiful landscape!

Qu'est-ce que c'est cher comme restaurant!

What an expensive restaurant!

If you want to use the expression *How...!*, you can say **Comme c'est...!** in French.

How...!

Comme c'est intéressant!

How interesting!

Comme c'est idiot!

How silly!

Comme c'est décevant!

How disappointing!

SURPRISE

There are many ways you can express surprise in everyday French.

C'est incroyable!

That's incredible!

Quelle surprise, dites donc!

What a surprise!

Je n'arrive pas à y croire!

I can't believe it!

Ce n'est pas possible!

That's impossible.

Tiens, tiens!

Well, what do you know!

Ah oui?

Really?

Dis donc! Il est drôlement tard!

Oh dear! It's very late!

BON À SAVOIR!

French speakers very often put **dis donc!** or **dites donc!** (equivalent to, though not old-fashioned like *I say!*) either at

the beginning or the end of a sentence when they're surprised.

ENCOURAGING SOMEONE

If you need to hurry someone up or get them to do something, you can say **Allez!** (*Come on!*).

Come on!

Allez! On y va!

Come on! Let's go!

Allez! On va être en retard.

Hurry up! We're going to be late.

Courage! Tu vas y arriver!

Come on! You're going to make it!

Encore un effort! Tu y es presque!

Keep it up! You're nearly there!

Vite! Le train va partir!

Quick! The train is about to leave!

Dépêche-toi! Le film va commencer!

Hurry up! The film's about to begin!

BON À SAVOIR!

You use **Allez!** with people you call **tu** and **vous**, but you would use **Dépêchez-vous!** instead of **Dépêchetoi!** with someone you call **vous**.

HANDING SOMEONE SOMETHING

If you're handing someone something, you can say **tiens** (or the **vous** form, **tenez**) to say *here you are*.

Here you are

[Your Click Matters](#)

Tiens.	Here you are.
Tenez.	Here you are.
Prends ça.	Take this.
Voilà.	Here.

DANGERS AND EMERGENCIES

Certain phrases are useful to know in the event of danger or emergencies. Here are some of them, though let's hope you never have to understand or use them. **Look out!**

Attention!	Look out!
Fais attention!	Be careful!
Attention à ton sac!	Watch your bag!
Au secours!	Help!
Aidez-moi!	Help me!
Au voleur!	Stop thief!
Au feu!	Fire!

SPEAKING YOUR MIND

If you get into an argument, here are some very common phrases which may come in handy! Be sure to use plenty of body language too.

For goodness sake!

Non mais, franchement!	For goodness sake!
------------------------	--------------------

Non mais, ça va pas?	What do you think you're doing?
Tu te prends pour qui?	Who do you think you are?
Non mais, tu rigoles?	Are you joking?
Et puis quoi, encore?	Whatever next!
Je n'y crois pas.	I don't believe it.
C'est hors de question.	It's out of the question.
N'importe quoi!	Nonsense!

BON À SAVOIR!

The French phrase **non mais** at the start of a sentence is a good way of expressing incredulity – it's similar to the English *Honestly!*

CONVERSATIONAL WORDS

Just as in English, there are lots of French words and expressions for linking different points together or for showing what your attitude towards something is. Here are the most useful of them. If you use them they will make you sound more fluent and natural. **ah bon**

Ah bon, je ne savais pas.

Right, I didn't know.

J'ai décidé de ne pas l'inviter. – **Ah** I decided not to invite her. – **bon?**

Really? alors

Je suis fatigué. – **Alors** vas te coucher. I'm tired. – Go to bed, **then. au fait**

Au fait, tu joues toujours du sax. Do you still play the sax, **by the way?**

BON À SAVOIR!

You don't usually pronounce consonants at the end of words in French, but you do say the **-t** in **au fait. bon**

Bon, on y va? **Right**, shall we go? **Bon**, à demain alors. **Ok**, see you tomorrow then. **c'est ça**

Vous êtes ici en vacances? – Oui, You're here on holiday? – **c'est ça. That's right.**

d'abord

D'abord, on va faire les courses. **First**, we'll do the shopping. **de toute façon**

De toute façon, c'est couvert par l'assurance. It's covered by the insurance anyway. **en fait**

En fait, j'ai arrêté de fumer il y a deux mois. **Actually**, I stopped smoking two months ago.

BON À SAVOIR!

You don't usually pronounce consonants at the end of words in French, but you do say the **-t** in **en fait.**

en n

En n bref, je ne vais pas venir. **In a word**, I'm not going to be able to come.

En n! Je viens de te le dire! **But** I've just told you! **en plus**

Je suis fatigué et **en plus** je n'ai pas envie d'y aller. I'm tired and **what's more** I just don't feel like going.

ensuite

Qu'est-ce qu'on fait **ensuite**?

Then what shall we do?

nalement

Tu as réussi à l'avoir, Did you manage to get hold of him **in nalement?**
the end?

Finalemnt, je vais prendre l'm going to take this jumper **after** ce pull.
all.

quand même

C'est **quand même** bizarre...

Still, it is strange...

Quand même! C'est pourtant pas **Honestly!** It's not rocket sorcier!
science!

Giftbooks4u.com

NOUNS

The gender of nouns

In French all nouns are either masculine or feminine:

- **le** or **un** before a noun tells you that it is masculine **la** or **une**
- before a noun tells you that it is feminine Whenever you are using a noun, you need to know whether it is masculine or feminine as this affects the form of other words used with it, such as:

- adjectives that describe it
- articles that go before it
- pronouns that replace it

[Your Click Matters](#)

Adjectives, articles and pronouns are also affected by whether a noun is singular or plural.

Nouns referring to people

Most nouns referring to men and boys are masculine. un

homme a man

un Français a Frenchman

Most nouns referring to women and girls are feminine. une

lle
a girl

une Canadienne a Canadian woman

Nouns referring to things

In English we call all things - for example, *table, car, book* – ‘it’. In French, however, things are either masculine or feminine.

There are a number of rules to tell you which nouns are masculine and which are feminine:

- words ending in **-e** are generally feminine, for example, **une boulangerie** (a baker's), **une banque** (a bank)
- words ending in a consonant are generally masculine, for example, **un lm** (a lm), **un chien** (a dog)
- words ending in **-age, -sme, -eau, -eu, and -ou** are often masculine, for example, **le fromage** (cheese), **le tourisme** (tourism), **un cadeau** (a present)

- words ending in **-ion** are often feminine, for example, **une addition** (*a bill*)

In addition, names of days of the week, and months and seasons of the year are masculine, as are the names of languages, for example, **le printemps** (*spring*), **le portugais** (*Portuguese*).

ARTICLES

Translating *the*

In French, articles – the words for *the* and *a* – vary according to the noun they are used with depending on whether it is masculine, feminine, singular or plural. The definite article *the* can be translated as: with masculine nouns with feminine nouns

singular **le (l')** **la (l')** plural **les** **les**

BON À SAVOIR!

le and **la** change to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**.

le train	the train
la voiture	the car
l' autoroute	the motorway
l' hôtel	the hotel
les clés	the keys
les enfants	the children

When using the definite article (**le**, **la**, **les**) with the prepositions **à** or **de**, the preposition and the article can combine to make a new form:

- **à + le** → **au** and **de + le** → **du**

[Your Click Matters](#)

au cinéma **at/to the** cinema **du** cinéma

from/of the cinema

• **à + les** → **aux** and **de + les** → **des**

aux maisons **to the** houses **des** maisons
from/of the houses

• **à + la/l'** and **de + la/l'** do not change

à l'hôtel **at/to the** hotel
de la bibliothèque **from/of the** library

So you would say **je vais à la gare** (*I'm going to the station*) and **je vais au restaurant** (*I'm going to the restaurant*).

Translating *a* some, any

The indefinite articles *a* and *an* can be translated as **un** or **une** depending on whether the word they are used with is masculine or feminine. In the plural **des** is used where in English you would use *some*, *any*, or use no word at all.

	with masculine nouns	with feminine nouns
singular	un	une
plural	des	des

un rendez-vous **an** appointment

une réunion **a** meeting

Vous voulez **des** dépliants? Would you like **some** leaflets?

Vous avez **des** enfants? Do you have **any** children?

J'ai **des** amis à Lyon. I have friends in Lyon.

The definite article (**le, la**) and indefinite article (**un, une**) are not always used in French when they are in English, and vice versa. They are also not always used in the same way.

La France est très belle.

France is very beautiful.

Il est professeur.

He's **a** teacher.

J'ai mal à **la** gorge.

I've got **a** sore throat.

PRONOUNS

Subject pronouns

Subject pronouns are words such as *I, he, she* and *they* which perform the action expressed by the verb. Here are the subject pronouns in French:

je (j')	I
tu (<i>informal, singular</i>)	you
il	he
elle	she
on	we
nous	we
vous (<i>formal, singular; plural</i>)	you
ils (<i>all masculine or masculine and feminine</i>)	they
elles (<i>all feminine</i>)	they

BON À SAVOIR!

je changes to **j'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h** and the French word **y**.

How do you say *you* in French?

In English we have only one way of saying *you*. In French there are two words: **tu** and **vous**. The word you use in French depends on: ● whether you are talking to one person or more than one person

- whether you are talking to a friend or family member or someone else

If you are talking to one person you know well, such as a friend, a young person, or a relative, use **tu**.

Tu me prêtes ce CD?

Will **you** lend me this CD?

If you are talking to one person you do not know so well, such as your teacher, your boss or a stranger, use **vous**.

Vous pouvez entrer.

You may come in.

BON À SAVOIR!

If you are in doubt as to which form of *you* to use, it is safest to use **vous** and you will not offend anyone.

Using **il/elle** and **ils/elles**

In English we generally refer to things (such as *table, book, car*) as 'it'. In French you use **il** for masculine nouns and **elle** for feminine nouns.

Prends cette chaise. **Elle** est plus confortable. Take this chair. **It's** more comfortable.

il is also used to talk about the weather, the time and in certain other set phrases, often in the same way as some phrases with *it* in English.

Il pleut.

It's raining.

Il est deux heures.

It's two o'clock.

[Your Click Matters](#)

Il faut partir.

We or you have to go.

ils and **elles** are used in the plural to talk about things, as well as people or animals. Use **ils** for masculine nouns and **elles** for feminine nouns.

Est-ce qu'il reste des billets? – Are there any tickets left? – No, Non, **ils** sont tous vendus. **they**'re all sold out.

If you're talking about masculine and feminine nouns together, use **ils**.

Emma et Gordon sont en retard; **ils** Emma and Gordon are late; arriveront dans une heure. **they**'ll get here in an hour.

Using on on is frequently used in informal, everyday French to mean *we*.

On y va? Shall **we** go? **on** can also have the sense of *someone* or *they*.

On m'a volé mon porte-monnaie. **Someone's** stolen my purse.

You can also use **on** as we use *you* in English when we mean people in general.

On peut visiter le château en **You** can visit the castle in the été.
summer.

Direct object pronouns

Direct object pronouns are words such as *me*, *him*, *us* and *them*, which are used instead of a noun. They stand in for the person or thing most directly affected by the action of the verb. Here are the French direct object pronouns:

me (m')

me

te (t') (<i>informal, singular</i>)	you
le (l')	him, it
la (l')	her, it
nous	us
vous (<i>formal, singular; plural</i>)	you
les	them

BON À SAVOIR!

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'**, and **le/la** to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

J'ai acheté le journal. Tu veux l've bought the paper. Do you want **le** lire?
to read **it**?

Je peux **vous** aider?

Can I help **you**?

Indirect object pronouns

An indirect object pronoun is used instead of a noun to show the person or thing the action is intended to benefit, for example the word *me* in *He gave me a book*. Here are the French indirect object pronouns:

me (m') me, to me, for me

te (t') (*informal, singular*) you, to you, for you

lui him, to him, for him; it, to it, for it **lui** her, to her, for her; it, to it,
for it

nous us, to us, for us

vous (<i>formal, singular; plural</i>)	you, to you, for you
leur	them, to them, for them

BON À SAVOIR!

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'**, and **le/la** to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

Je lui ai parlé.	I spoke to her .
-------------------------	-------------------------

Tu leur as téléphoné?	Did you give them a ring?
------------------------------	----------------------------------

Emphatic pronouns

An emphatic pronoun is used instead of a noun when you want to emphasize something, for example the word *me* in *Is this for me?*. Here are the French emphatic pronouns:

moi	I, me
toi (<i>informal, singular</i>)	you
lui	he, him
elle	she, her
soi	oneself, yourself, ourselves
nous	we, us
vous (<i>formal, singular; plural</i>)	you
eux (<i>masculine</i>)	they, them
elles (<i>feminine</i>)	they, them

Emphatic pronouns are mostly used after a preposition, for emphasis, on their own without a verb, after **c'est** and **ce sont**, and in comparisons.

Venez avec **moi**.

Come with **me**.

Moi, je n'ai pas compris.

I didn't understand.

Qui en veut? – **Moi!**

Who wants some? – **I do!**

C'est **toi**?

Is that **you**?

Using **en** and **y**

en is used with verbs and phrases usually followed by **de**, such as **être fier de quelque chose** (*to be proud of something*), to avoid repeating the same word.

Il a un beau jardin et il **en** très fier. He's got a beautiful garden and is very proud **of it**. **en** can also replace **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des**.

Je n'ai pas d'argent. Tu **en** any? I haven't got any money. Have you got as?

When **en** is used with **avoir**, **il y a** or with numbers, it is often not translated in English, but can never be missed out in French.

J'**en** veux deux.

I want two.

y is used with verbs and phrases normally followed by **à**, such as **penser à quelque chose** (*to think about something*), to avoid repeating the same word.

Je pensais à l'examen. – I was thinking about the exam. – Mais arrête d'**y** penser! Well, stop thinking **about it!**

y can also mean *there*. It can be used to replace phrases that would use prepositions such as **dans** and **sur**.

Elle **y** a passé tout l'été. She spent the whole summer **there**. **y** is used in the phrase **il y a** to mean both *there is* and *there are*.

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte. **There is** someone at the door.

Il y a cinq livres sur la table. **There are** five books on the table.

ADJECTIVES

Agreement of adjectives

In dictionaries, French adjectives are usually shown in the masculine singular form. You need to know how to change them to make them agree with the noun or pronoun they are describing. To make an adjective agree, you simply add the following endings to the masculine singular adjective in most cases:

- no additional ending for masculine singular
- add **-e** for feminine singular
- add **-s** for the masculine plural
- add **-es** for the feminine plural

un chat **noir** a **black** cat

une chemise **noire** a **black** shirt

des chats **noirs** **black** cats

des chemises **noires** **black** shirts

If the adjective already ends in an **-e** in the masculine singular form, you do not add another **-e** for the feminine singular.

un sac **jaune** a **yellow** bag

une chemise **jaune** a **yellow** shirt

Some very common adjectives have irregular feminine forms, for example, **blanc/blanche**, **favori/favorite**, **sec/sèche** and so on. These irregular feminine forms are shown in the dictionary along with the masculine singular form.

mon sport **favori** my **favourite** sport ma chanson **favorite** my **favourite** song

A very small group of French adjectives have an extra masculine singular form which is used in front of words that begin with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**. These adjectives also have an irregular feminine form:

masc sing	masc sing before vowel	feminine
beau bel	belle fou fol folle	
nouveau	nouvel	nouvelle
vieux	vieil	vieille

un **beau** jardin a **beautiful** garden un **bel** arbre a

beautiful tree un **nouveau** lm a **new** lm

un **nouvel** ami a **new** friend

If the masculine singular form already ends in an **-s** or an **-x**, you do not add another **-s** in the plural.

un fromage **français** a **French** cheese des fromages **français**

French cheeses If the masculine singular form ends in **-eau** or **-al**, the masculine plural is usually **-eaux** or **-aux**.

le **nouveau** professeur the **new** teacher

les **nouveaux** professeurs the **new** teachers

un livre **original** an **unusual** book

des livres **originaux**

unusual books

Adjectives which do not change

A small number of adjectives (mostly relating to colours) do not change in the feminine or plural. They are called invariable adjectives. These adjectives are often made up of more than one word, for example, **bleu marine** (*navy blue*), or else come from the names of fruits or nuts, for example, **orange** (*orange*) and **marron** (*brown*).

des chaussures **marron** **brown** shoes une veste **bleu marine**

a **navy blue** jacket

Word order with adjectives

French adjectives usually go after the noun, and adjectives describing colours, shapes or nationalities always go after the noun.

l'heure **exacte**

the **right** time

des cravates **rouges**

red ties

une table **ronde**

a **round** table

la cuisine **italienne**

Italian food

There are some very common adjectives which go before the noun:

beau, bon, grand, gros, joli, long, meilleur, nouveau, petit. une **belle**

journée a **lovely** day

Bonne chance!

Good luck!

Some adjectives can either go before or after the noun, but their meaning changes depending on where they go, for example, **ancien, cher, propre.**

un **ancien** collègue

a **former** colleague

un fauteuil **ancien**

an **antique** chair

Chère Julie

Dear Julie

un restaurant **cher**

an **expensive** restaurant

ma **propre** chambre

my **own** room

des draps **propres**

clean sheets

If two adjectives are used with a noun and they both come after it, they are joined together by **et** (*and*). une personne intéressante **et** drôle
an interesting, funny person

Comparisons

To say something is bigger, more beautiful and so on, put **plus** (*more*) before the adjective. To say that something is less important, less expensive and so on, put **moins** (*less*) before the adjective.

Emma est **plus** grande.

Emma is taller.

Cet hôtel est **plus** cher **que** This hotel is **more** expensive **than** l'autre. the other one.

Son dernier livre est **moins** His last book is **less** interesting. intéressant.

Possessive adjectives

In English a possessive adjective is one of the words *my, your, his, her, its, our* or *their* used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another. Here are the French possessive adjectives:

	with masculine singular nouns	with feminine singular nouns	with plural nouns
my	mon	ma (mon)	mes
your	ton	ta (ton)	tes

his; her; its; **son** one's

sa (son)

ses

our **notre**

notre

nos

your **votre**

votre

vos

their **leur**

leur

leurs

Possessive adjectives agree with the noun they describe, not with the person who owns that thing. For example, **sa** can mean *his, her, its* and *one's*, but can only be used with a feminine noun.

Mon frère s'appelle Andrew.

My brother is called Andrew.

Ma sœur s'appelle Danielle.

My sister is called Danielle.

Mes parents sont retraités.

My parents are retired.

Sa voiture a été volée.

His or her car was stolen.

Son amie est galloise.

His or her friend is Welsh.

BON À SAVOIR!

ma changes to **mon**, **ta** to **ton**, and **sa** to **son** in front of feminine singular nouns beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**. This makes them easier to say.

QUESTIONS

How to ask a question in French

There are several ways of asking a question in French:

- by using the phrase **est-ce que**
- by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence by
- changing the word order in the sentence

When the phrase **est-ce que** is used to ask a question the word order stays the same as in an ordinary sentence. **est-ce que** comes before the subject, and the verb comes after the subject.

Est-ce que vous allez en ville?

Are you going into town?

Quand est-ce que vous arrivez?

When do you arrive?

If you are expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, there is a very straightforward way of asking a question. You keep the word order as it would be in an ordinary sentence, but turn it into a question by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence. This will make you sound less formal.

On part tout de suite?

Are we leaving right away?

Tu prends un café?

Are you getting a coffee?

Tu ne l'as pas fait? – Si.

Haven't you done it? – Yes(, I have).

BON À SAVOIR!

si is the word you use to reply to a question or statement that contains a negative expression like **ne... pas**.

You can also ask a question by changing the word order in the sentence. To do this you put the verb before the subject and add a hyphen between the verb and the subject. This is quite a formal way of asking a question.

Aimez-vous la France?

Do you like France?

Où **vont-ils?**

Where **are they going?**

When the verb ends in a vowel in the **il/elle** form, **-t-** is inserted before the pronoun to make the words easier to say.

Aime-t-il les chiens?

Does he like dogs?

In the perfect tense and in other tenses that consist of two or more words, the part of the verb that comes from **avoir** and **être** goes before the pronoun. For more information on the perfect tense, see [page 273](#).

Est-elle restée longtemps?

Did she stay long?

NEGATIVES

Making sentences negative

In French, if you want to make a statement negative, you generally use a pair of words, for example, **ne ... pas** (*not*), **ne ... jamais** (*never*) and so on. The verb goes in between these two words. In English, *do* is often used in negative statements. The French verb **faire** is never used in this way.

Je **ne** fume **pas**.

I **don't** smoke.

Jeremy **ne** prend **jamais** les transports Jeremy **never** uses public en commun. transport.

Il **n'**habite **plus** ici.

He **anymore****doesn't**. live here

BON À SAVOIR!

ne changes to **n'** in front of a word that starts with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

In everyday conversation French speakers often miss out the word **ne**. Be careful not to do this yourself in formal situations.

Je peux pas venir ce soir. I **can't** come tonight. The French word **ne** is missed out when negatives are used without a verb to answer a question.

Qui a téléphoné? – **Personne**.

Who phoned? – **Nobody**.

moi non plus is the equivalent of English phrases like *me neither, neither do I, neither was I*, and so on. You can use it in all situations without worrying about the tense of the verb.

Je ne suis jamais allée en Italie. –
Moi non plus.

I've never been to Italy. –
Neither have I.

Je n'y vais pas et **lui non plus**.

I'm not going and **he. neither is**

Word order with negatives

Negative expressions in French 'sandwich' the verb. **ne** goes before the verb and the other half of the expression comes after the verb.

Il **ne** boit **jamais**.

He **never** drinks.

Je **n'**entends **rien**.

I **can't** hear anything.

Je **n'**ai vu **personne**.

I **didn't** see anybody.

However, in the perfect tense and other tenses that consist of two or more words, **pas, rien, plus** and **jamais** are sandwiched between **avoir** or **être** and the past participle. For more information on the perfect tense, see [page 273](#).

Je **n'**ai **pas** compris.

I **didn't** understand.

Nous **ne** sommes **jamais** allés We've chez eux. **never** been to their house.

A negative sentence may also contain a pronoun such as **te, le, lui** and so on or a reflexive pronoun. If so, **ne** comes before the pronoun.

Je **ne t'**entends **pas**.

I **can't** hear **you**.

Il **ne se** lève **jamais** avant midi. He **never** gets up before midday.

After negative expressions, **un**, **une** and **des** change to **de**, as do **du**, **de la**, **de l'**. For example, **Elle a acheté une glace** becomes **elle n'a pas acheté de glace**.

Je ne veux pas **de** café. I don't want **any** coffee. Il n'y a plus

d'eau. There's no water left.

BON À SAVOIR!

de changes to **d'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, and most words beginning with **h**.

SOME COMMON TRANSLATION DIFFICULTIES

You can't always translate French into English and English into French word for word. The next section points out some common translation difficulties to watch out for.

Prepositions

English phrasal verbs, for example, *to run away*, *to fall down*, are often translated by one word in French. continuer to go on

tomber to fall down

Sentences which contain a verb and preposition in English might not contain a preposition in French, and vice versa.

écouter quelque chose to listen **to** something

téléphoner à quelqu'un to call somebody

The same French preposition may be translated into English in

different ways. croire **à**

quelque chose

prendre quelque chose **à**
quelqu'un

to take something **from** somebody

rendre quelque chose **à**
quelqu'un

to give something back **to**
somebody

to believe **in** something

Singular and plural nouns

A word which is singular in English may not be in French, and vice versa.

les bagages

luggage

mon pantalon

my trousers

-ing

The **-ing** ending in English is translated in a number of different ways in French:

- *to be ...-ing* is translated by a verb consisting of one word.

Il **part** demain.

He's **leaving** tomorrow.

- **-ing** can also be translated by an infinitive or a noun.

J'aime **aller** au cinéma. I like **going** to the cinema. **Le ski** me

maintient en forme. **Skiing** keeps me fit. **to be**

The verb *to be* is generally translated by **être**.

Il **est** tard.

It's late.

When you are talking about the physical position of something, **se trouver** can be used.

Où **se trouve** la gare?

Where **is** the station?

In certain set phrases which describe how you are feeling or a state you are in, the verb **avoir** is used.

avoir chaud

to be warm

avoir froid

to be cold

avoir faim

to be hungry

avoir soif

to be thirsty

avoir peur

to be afraid

avoir tort

to be wrong

avoir raison

to be right

When you are talking about someone's age, also use the verb **avoir**.

Quel âge **as-tu**?

How old **are** you?

J'**ai** quinze ans.

I'**m** fteen.

When talking about your health, use the verb **aller**.

Comment **allez-vous**? How **are** you? Je **vais** très bien.

I'**m** very well. **it is, it's**

In most constructions and phrases which translate *it is* and *it's*, use **c'est**.

C'est moi!

It's me!

C'est assez facile.

It's quite easy.

it is and *it's* are usually translated by **il est** or **elle est** when referring to a noun, depending on whether the noun is masculine or feminine.

Descends la valise si **elle** Bring the case down if heavy. **it's** not too **n'est pas** trop lourde.

When you are talking about the time, use **il est**.

Quelle heure **est-il?** – **Il est** What time seven. **is it?** – **It's** half past sept heures et demie.

When you are describing what the weather is like, use **faire**.

Quel temps **fait-il?** What's the weather like?

Il fait beau. **It's** lovely.

Il fait du vent. **It's** windy.

can, to be able

If you want to talk about someone's physical ability to do something, use **pouvoir**.

Pouvez-vous faire dix kilometres **Can** à pied? you walk ten kilometres?

When *can* is used with verbs to do with what you can see or hear, you do not use **pouvoir** in French.

Je ne vois rien. **I can't see** anything.

If you want to say that you don't know how to do something, use **savoir**.

Elle **ne sait pas** nager.

She **can't** swim.

Showing possession

In English, you can use 's and s' to show who or what something belongs to. In French, you have to use a different construction. la

voiture **de** mon frère my brother's car la chambre **des** filles the girls' bedroom

VERBS

Introduction to verbs

Verbs are usually used with a noun, with a pronoun such as *I*, *you* or *he*, or with somebody's name. They can relate to the present, the past and the future – this is called their tense.

Verbs can be either:

- Regular: their forms follow the normal rules
- Irregular: their forms do not follow the normal rules

Regular English verbs have a base form (the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for example, *walk*). The base form can have *to* in front of it, for example, *to walk* – this is called the infinitive.

French verbs also have an infinitive, which ends in **-er**, **-ir** or **-re**, for example, **aimer** (*to love*), **nir** (*to nish*) and **attendre** (*to wait*). Regular French verbs belong to one of these three verb groups, which are called conjugations.

English verbs have other forms apart from the base form and the infinitive: a form ending in *-s* (*walks*), a form ending in *-ing* (*walking*), and a form ending in *-ed* (*walked*). French verbs have many more forms than this,

which are made up of endings added to a stem. The stem of a verb can usually be worked out from the infinitive of the verb.

French verb endings change depending on who you are talking about: **je** (I), **il/elle/on** (he/she/we) in the singular, or **nous** (we), **vous** (you) and **ils/elles** (they) in the plural. French verbs also have different forms depending on whether you are referring to the present, the past or the future.

Irregular verbs

Some verbs in French do not follow the normal rules and are called irregular verbs. These include some very common and important verbs like **avoir** (to have), **être** (to be), **faire** (to do or to make) and **aller** (to go). The most common irregular verbs are shown in the verb tables, along with a number of others that you may need to use. For more detailed information on all the most important irregular verbs in French, use *Collins Easy Learning French Verbs*.

Regular verbs

There are three groups of regular verbs:

- **-er** verbs: verbs that end in **-er** like **aimer** (shown in full on [page 275](#))
- **-ir** verbs: verbs that end in **-ir** like **nir** (shown in full on [page 276](#))
- **-re** verbs: verbs that end in **-re** like **attendre** (shown in full on [page 277](#))

These are called regular verbs because they follow set patterns. When you have learned these patterns you will be able to form, or conjugate, any regular verb.

To form the stem of the verb for the present, imperfect and present subjunctive of any regular verb, take the infinitive minus the last two

letters, for example, **aimer** → **aim-**; **nir** → **n-**; **attendre** → **attend-**, and add the appropriate ending.

To form the future and conditional tense of any regular verb, take the infinitive of **-er** and **-ir** verbs, for example, **aimer**; **nir**, or the infinitive minus **-e** of **-re** verbs, for example, **attendre** → **attendr-**, and add the appropriate ending.

Verb endings for regular verbs are highlighted in orange in the verb tables on the following pages.

To form the perfect tense of any regular verb, you need:

- to be able to conjugate **avoir** and **être** in the present tense (see [pages 280](#) and [282](#))
- to be able to form the past participle

To form the past participle of any regular verb, take the infinitive minus the last two letters, for example, **aimer** → **aim-**; **nir** → **n-**; **attendre** → **attend-**, and add the appropriate ending **-é**, **-i**, or **-u**. The past participles of **aimer**, **nir** and **attendre** are therefore **aimé**, **ni**, and **attendu**.

Spelling changes in **-er** verbs

Using the patterns of the regular **-er** verb **aimer** on [page 275](#), you can now work out the forms of most **-er** verbs. A few verbs, though, involve a small spelling change. This is usually to do with the way the word is pronounced. With verbs ending in **-cer** such as **lancer** (*to throw*), **c** becomes **ç** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **c** is still pronounced like the *c* in the English word *ice*.

je lance

I throw

nous lançons

we throw

With verbs ending in **-ger** such as **manger** (*to eat*), **g** becomes **ge** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **g** is still pronounced like the *s* in the English word *leisure*.

tu manges

you're eating

nous mangeons

we're eating

With verbs ending in **-eler** such as **appeler** (*to call*), the **l** doubles before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The double consonant (**ll**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **appeler**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **appelle** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Comment t'appelles tu?

What's your name?

Comment vous appelez vous?

What's your name?

There are two exceptions: **geler** (*to freeze*) and **peeler** (*to peel*) change in the same way as **lever** (*to lift*). See below.

With verbs ending in **-eter** such as **jeter** (*to throw*), the **t** doubles before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The double consonant (**tt**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **jeter**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **jette** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

je jette

I throw

nous jetons

we throw

The exceptions to this rule include **acheter** (*to buy*) which changes in the same way as **lever** (*to lift*). See below.

With verbs ending in **-yer** such as **nettoyer** (*to clean*), the **y** changes to **i** before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**.

je nettoie

I clean

nous nettoyons

we clean

Verbs ending in **-ayer**, such as **payer** (*to pay*) and **essayer** (*to try*), can be spelled with either a **y** or an **i**. So **je paie** and **je paye**, for example, are both correct.

With a small number of verbs such as **lever** (to lift), **peser** (to weigh), **geler** (to freeze), **peler** (to peel) and **acheter** (to buy), **e** changes to **è** before the consonant and the endings **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The accent changes the pronunciation too. In **lever** the first **e** sounds like the vowel at the end of *teacher*, but in **lève** and so on the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

j'achète

I buy

nous achetons

we buy

With verbs such as **espérer** (to hope), **préférer** (to prefer) and **régler** (to adjust, to pay), **é** changes to **è** before the consonant and the endings **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**.

je préfère

I prefer

nous préférons

we prefer

Re exive verbs

Re exive verbs are verbs where the action “reflects back” on the subject. The verb is used with a re exive pronoun such as *myself*, *yourself* and *herself* in English, for example *I washed myself*; *he shaved himself*. French re exive verbs are shown in the dictionary as **se** or **s'** (the re exive pronoun) plus the infinitive, for example **se coucher** (to go to bed), **s'appeler** (to be called).

Re exive verbs are much more common in French than they are in English. They are often used to describe things you do (to yourself) every day or that involve a change of some sort (going to bed, sitting down, getting angry, going to sleep). Here are some examples of the most common French re exive verbs:

s'amuser to enjoy oneself, to play

s'appeler to be called

s'asseoir to sit down

se coucher	to go to bed
se dépêcher	to hurry up
s'habiller	to get dressed
se passer	to take place, to happen, to go
se réveiller	to wake up
se trouver	to be (situated)

To use a reflexive verb in French, you need to decide which reflexive pronoun to use. Here are the French reflexive pronouns: subject pronoun reflexive pronoun meaning

je me (m') myself **tu te (t')** yourself

il		himself herself
elle	se (s')	itself <i>or</i> oneself
on		ourselves
nous	nous	ourselves
vous	vous	yourself (<i>singular</i>) yourselves (<i>plural</i>)
ils	se (s')	themselves
elles		

Il **s'**habille. He's getting dressed.

Je **m'**appelle Maree. My name's Maree.

Nous **nous** couchons de bonne heure. We go to bed early.

You will find an example of a reflexive verb **s'asseoir** conjugated in full on [page 278](#).

VERB TENSES

The present tense

The present tense is used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student; he works as a consultant; I'm studying French.*

There is more than one way to express the present tense in English. For example, you can either say *I give, I am giving* or occasionally *I do give*. In French, you use the same form **je donne** for all these. In English you can also use the present tense to talk about something that is going to happen in the near future. You can do the same in French.

J'emménage à la fin du **mois** **I'm moving in** at the end of the **month**.

On sort avec Aurélie ce soir. **We're going out** with Aurélie tonight.

The future tense

The future tense is used to talk about something that will happen or will be true. There are several ways to express the future tense in English: you can use the future tense (*I'll ask him on Tuesday*), the present tense (*I'm not working tomorrow*), or *going to* followed by an infinitive (*she's going to study in France for a year*). In French you can also use the future tense, the present tense, or the verb **aller** (*to go*) followed by an infinitive.

Elle ne rentrera pas avant **She won't be back** before minuit.
midnight.

Il arrive dans dix minutes. **He's coming** in ten minutes.

Je vais chez le coiffeur. **I'm going to** have my hair cut.

The imperfect tense

The imperfect tense is one of the tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what used to happen, for example *I used to work in Manchester; it was sunny yesterday.*

Je ne faisais rien de spécial. **I wasn't doing anything** special.

C'était une super fête. **It was** a great party.

Avant, **il était** professeur. **He used to be** a teacher.

The perfect tense

The perfect tense is made up of two parts: the present tense of **avoir** or **être**, and the French past participle (like *given, nished* and *done* in English). To find out how to form the past participle of any regular verb in French, see [page 269](#).

Most verbs form the perfect tense with **avoir**. There are two main groups of verbs which form their perfect tense with **être** instead of **avoir**: all reflexive verbs (see [page 271](#)) and a group of verbs that are mainly used to talk about movement or a change of some kind, including:

aller to go **venir** to come

arriver to arrive, to happen **partir** to leave, to go

descendre to go down, to come down, to get off **monter**

to go up, to come up **entrer** to go in, to come in **sortir** to

go out, to come out **mourir** to die **naître** to be born

devenir to become **rester** to stay **tomber** to fall

Richard **est parti** de bonne heure. Richard **left** early. heure.

Tu es sortie hier soir?

Did you go out last night?

On est resté trois jours à Toulouse. **We stayed** in Toulouse for three days.

The imperative

The imperative is a form of the verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Be quiet!*; *Don't forget your passport!*; *Please ll in this form.*

In French, there are several forms of the imperative that are used to give instructions or orders to someone. These correspond to **tu**, **vous** and **nous**. The **nous** form means the same as *let's* in English. For regular verbs, the imperative is the same as the **tu**, **nous** and **vous** forms of the present tense, except that you do not say the pronouns **tu**, **nous** and **vous**. Also, in the **tu** form of **-er** verbs like **aimer**, the nal **-s** is dropped.

Arrête de me faire rire!

Stop making me laugh!

Venez déjeuner chez nous.

Come round to ours for lunch.

Allons voir ce qu'ils font.

Let's go and see what they're up to.

The subjunctive

The subjunctive is a verb form that is used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show there is doubt about whether something will happen or something is true. It is used after certain structures in French, for example, **il faut que** and **il faudrait que**.

Il faut que je rentre.

I have to get back.

Il faudrait qu'on loue une voiture.

We should hire a car.

Je veux que tu viennes avec moi.

I want you to come with me.

The conditional

The conditional is a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or that would be true under certain conditions, for instance, *I would help you if I could*. It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, *Could you give me the bill?*

Je voudrais deux billets.

I'd like two tickets.

Si j'étais toi, **je téléphonerais**.

I'd call if I were you. Giftbooks4u.com

AIMER

to love

present

j'aime

tu aimes

il aime

nous aimons

vous aimez

ils aiment

imperfect

j'aimais

tu aimais

il aimait

nous aimions

vous aimiez

ils aimaient

perfect

j'ai aimé

*tu*as aimé

*il*a aimé

*nous*avons aimé

*vous*avez aimé

*ils*ont aimé

future

*j'*aimerai

*tu*aimeras

*il*aimera

*nous*aimerons

*vous*aimerez

*ils*aimeront

present subjunctive

*j'*aim**e**

*tu*aim**es**

*il*aim**e**

*nous*aim**ions**

*vous*aim**iez**

*ils*aim**ent**

present participle

aim**ant**

imperative

aim**e** aim**ons** aim**ez**

conditional

*j'*aimer**ais**

*tu*aimer**ais**

*il*aimer**ait**

*nous*aimer**ions**

*vous*aimer**iez**

*ils*aimer**aient**

past participle

aim**é**

example phrases

Est-ce que vous aimez voyager?

J'**aimerais** réserver une table pour deux personnes.

Je **n'ai pas aimé** le lm.

Do you like to travel?

I'**d like to** book a table for two people.

I **didn't like** the movie.

FINIR

to nish

present

*jen***is**

*tun***is**

*il***n***it*

*nous***n***issons*

*vous***n***issez*

*ils***n***issent*

imperfect

*jen***issais**

*tun***issais**

*il***n***issait*

*nous***n***issions*

*vous***n***issiez*

*ils***n***issaient*

perfect

j'ai ni

tu**as** ni

*il***a** ni

*nous***avons** ni

*vous***avez** ni

*ils***ont** ni

future

*je*nir**ai**

*tu*nir**as**

*il*nir**a**

*nous*nir**ons**

*vous*nir**ez**

*ils*nir**ont**

present subjunctive

*je***nisse**

*tu***nisses**

*il***nisse**

*nous***nissions**

*vous***nissiez**

*ils***nissent**

present participle

nissant

imperative **nis** **nissons**

nissez

conditional

*je***nirais**

*tu***nirais**

*il***nirait**

*nous***nirions**

*vous***niriez**

*ils***niraient**

past participle

ni

example phrases

J'ai ni.

I've nished.

Elle n'a pas encore ni de manger. She hasn't nished eating yet.

Tu nis le travail à quelle heure?

What time do you nish work?

ATTENDRE

to wait

present

*j'*attends

*tu*attends

*il*attend

*nous*attendons

*vous*attendez

*ils*attendent

imperfect

*j'*attendais

*tu*attendais

*il*attendait

*nous*attendions

*vous*attendiez

*ils*attendaient

perfect

j'ai attendu
*tu*as attendu
*il*a attendu
*nous*avons attendu
*vous*avez attendu
*ils*ont attendu

future

*j'*attendrai
*tu*attendras
*il*attendra
*nous*attendrons
*vous*attendrez
*ils*attendront

present subjunctive

*j'*attend**e**

*tu*attend**es**

*il*attend**e**

*nous*attend**ions**

*vous*attend**iez**

*ils*attend**ent**

present participle

attend**ant** imperative

attend**s** attend**ez**

conditional

*j'*attendr**ais**

*tu*attendr**ais**

*il*attendr**ait**

*nous*attendr**ions**

*vous*attendr**iez**

*ils*attendr**aient**

past participle

attend**u**

attend**ons**

example phrases

Tu **attends** depuis longtemps? Have you **been waiting** long?

Attendez-moi!

Wait for me!

Je **l'ai attendu** à la poste.

I **waited for** him at the post office.

S'ASSEOIR

to sit down

present

*je***m'assieds**

*tu***t'assieds**

*ils***'assied**

*nous***nous asseyons**

*vous***vous asseyez**

*ils***s'asseyent**

imperfect

*je***m'asseyais**

*tu***t'asseyais**

*ils***'asseyait**

*nous***nous asseyions**

*vous***vous asseyiez**

*ils***s'asseyaient**

perfect

je **me suis assis(e)**

tu **t'es assis(e)**

il **'est assis**

nous **nous sommes assis(es)**

vous **vous êtes assis(e(s))**

ils **se sont assis**

future

je **m'assiérai**

tu **t'assiéras**

ils **'assiéra**

nous **nous assiérons**

vous **vous assiérez**

ils **s'assiéront**

present subjunctive

je **m'asseye**

tu **t'asseyes**

ils **'asseye**

nous **nous asseyions**

vous **vous asseyiez**

ils **s'asseyent**

present participle

s'asseyant

imperative assieds-toi

asseyons-nous asseyez-vous

conditional

je **m'assiérais**

tu **t'assiérais**

ils **'assiérait**

nous **nous assiérions**

vous **vous assiériez**

ils **s'assiérait**

past participle

assis

example phrases

Je peux m'asseoir?

Assieds-toi, Jean-Claude.

Asseyez-vous, les enfants.

May I **sit down**?

Sit down, Jean-Claude.

Sit down, children.

ALLER

to go

present

*je***vais**

*tu***vas**

*il***va**

*nous*allons

*vous*allez

*ils***vont**

imperfect

*j'*allais

*tu*allais

*il*allait

*nous*allions

*vous*alliez

*ils*allaient

perfect

je suis allé(e)

tu es allé (e)

il est allé

nous sommes allé(e)s

vous êtes allé(e(s))

ils sont allés

future

*j'*irai

tu iras

il ira

nous irons

vous irez

ils iront

present subjunctive

j'aille

*tu*ailles

*il*aille

*nous*illions

*vous*alliez

*ils*aillent

present participle

allant

imperative

va allons allez

conditional

*j'*irais

*tu*irais

*il*irait

*nous*irions

*vous*iriez

*ils*iraient

past participle

allé

example phrases

Vous **allez** souvent au cinéma?

Do you often **go** to the cinema?

Je **suis allé** à Londres.

I **went** to London.

Va voir s'ils sont arrivés.

Go and see whether they have arrived.

AVOIR

to have

present

j'ai

tuas

ila

nousavons

ilsont

imperfect

j'avais

tuavais

ilavait

nousavions

ilsavaient

perfect

j'ai eu

tu as eu

il a eu

nous avons eu

vous avez eu

ils ont eu

future

j'aurai

tu auras

il aura

nous aurons

vous aurez

ils auront

present subjunctive

j'aie
tuaies
ilait
nousayons
vousayez
ilsaient

conditional

j'aurais
tuaurais
ilaurait
nousaurions
vousauriez
ilsauraient

present participle

ayant

imperative aie

ayons ayez

past participle

eu

example phrases

Il **a** les yeux bleus.

He's **got** blue eyes.

Vous **avez** réservé?

Have you booked?

Emma **aura** deux ans au mois de juillet. Emma **will be** two in July.

DEVOIR

to have, to owe

present

*je***dois**

*tu***dois**

*il***doit**

*nous***devons**

*vous***devez**

*ils***doivent**

imperfect

*je***devais**

*tu***devais**

*il***devait**

*nous***devions**

*vous***deviez**

*ils***devaient**

perfect

j'ai dû

*tu*as dû

*il*a dû

*nous*avons dû

*vous*avez dû

*ils*ont dû

future

*je*devrai

*tu*devras

*il*devra

*nous*devrons

*vous*devrez

*ils*devront

present subjunctive

*je*doive

*tu*doives

*il*doive

*nous*devions

*vous*deviez

*ils*doivent

present participle

devant

imperative dois

devons devez

conditional

*je*devrais

*tu*devrais

*il*devrait

*nous*devrions

*vous*devriez

*ils*devraient

past participle

dû (NB due, dus, dues)

example phrases

Je propriétaire.**dois** téléphoner à ma I **must** ring my landlady.

Vous **devriez** changer vos livres You **should** change your pounds ici.
here.

On **a dû** dormir à l'hôtel.

We **had to** sleep in a hotel.

ÊTRE

to be

present

je suis

tu es

il est

nous sommes

vous êtes

ils sont

imperfect

j'étais

tu étais

il était

nous étions

vous étiez

ils étaient

perfect

j'ai été

tu as été

il a été

nous avons été

vous avez été

ils ont été

future

je serai

tu seras

il sera

nous serons

vous serez

ils seront

present subjunctive

*je*sois

*tu*sois

*il*soit

*nous*soyons

*vous*soyez

*ils*soient

present participle

étant

imperative

sois soyons soyez

conditional

*je*serais

*tu*serais

*il*serait

*nous*serions

*vous*seriez

*ils*seraient

past participle

été

example phrases

Quelle heure heures.**est**-il? – Il **est** dix What time **is** it? – It's ten o'clock.

Ils **ne sont pas** encore arrivés. They **haven't** arrived yet. Il faut qu'on **soit**
à la gare dans We have to **be** at the station in ten dix minutes.
minutes' time.

FAIRE

to do, to make

present

je fais

tu fais

il fait

nous faisons

vous faites

ils font

imperfect

je faisais

tu faisais

il faisait

nous faisions

vous faisiez

ils faisaient

perfect

*j'*ai fait

*tu*as fait

*il*a fait

*nous*avons fait

*vous*avez fait

*ils*ont fait

future

*je*ferai

*tu*feras

*il*fera

*nous*ferons

*vous*ferez

*ils*feront

present subjunctive

je fasse

tu fasses

il fasse

nous fassions

vous fassiez

ils fassent

present participle

faisant

imperative

fais faisons faites

conditional

je ferais

tu ferais

il ferait

nous ferions

vous feriez

ils feraient

past participle

fait

example phrases

Qu'est-ce que vous **faites**?

What **are** you **doing**?

Il va **faire** beau demain.

The weather will **be** nice
tomorrow.

Je **n'ai pas** encore **fait** la vaisselle.

I **haven't done** the washing up
yet.

POUVOIR

to be able

present

*je*peux

*tu*peux

*il*peut

*nous*pouvons

*vous*pouvez

*ils*peuvent

imperfect

*je*pouvais

*tu*pouvais

*il*pouvait

*nous*pouvions

*vous*pouviez

*ils*pouvaient

perfect

j'ai pu

tu as pu

il a pu

nous avons pu

vous avez pu

ils ont pu

future

je pourrai

tu pourras

il pourra

nous pourrons

vous pourrez

ils pourront

present subjunctive

je puisse

tu puisses

il puisse

nous puissions

vous puissiez

ils puissent

present participle

pouvant

imperative *not*

used

conditional

je pourrais

tu pourrais

il pourrait

nous pourrions

vous pourriez

ils pourraient

past participle

pu

example phrases

Je **peux** vous aider?

Can I help you?

Vous cadeau?**pourriez** me faire un paquet- **Could** you gift wrap it for me?

Je **ne pourrai pas** venir samedi.

I Saturday.**won't be able to** come on

VOULOIR

to want

present

*je*veux

*tu*veux

*il*veut

*nous*voulons

*vous*voulez

*ils*veulent

imperfect

*je*voulais

*tu*voulais

*il*voulait

*nous*voulions

*vous*vouliez

*ils*voulaient

perfect

j'ai voulu

tu as voulu

il a voulu

nous avons voulu

vous avez voulu

ils ont voulu

future

je voudrai

tu voudras

il voudra

nous voudrons

vous voudrez

ils voudront

present subjunctive

*je*veuille

*tu*veilles

*il*veuille

*nous*voulions

*vous*vouliez

*ils*veillent

present participle

voulant

imperative

veille veillons veuillez

conditional

*je*voudrais

*tu*voudrais

*il*voudrait

*nous*voudrions

*vous*voudriez

*ils*voudraient

past participle

voulu

example phrases

Je **voudrais** aller voir un lm.

Est-ce que vous **voulez** du café?

Elles **voulaient** venir.

I'd **like to** go and see a movie.

Do you want some coffee?

They **wanted** to come.

Giftbooks4u.com

[Your Click Matters](#)

VOCABULARY BUILDER

A

A, an un, une **able to be able**

to pouvoir

about (*relating to*) au sujet de; **What is it about?** C'est à quel sujet?; **I don't know anything about it** Je ne suis pas au courant; **at about 10 o'clock** vers dix heures

above above the bed au-dessus du lit

abroad à l'étranger **abscess** l'abcès *m*

accelerator l'accélérateur *m*

to accept accepter; **Do you accept this card?** Vous acceptez cette carte?

access l'accès *m*; **wheelchair access** accès aux handicapés **accident** l'accident *m*

accident & emergency department les urgences *fpl* **accommodation** le logement

according to selon; **according to him** selon lui

account le compte

account number le numéro de compte

to ache faire mal; **My head aches** J'ai mal à la tête; **It aches** Ça fait mal

address l'adresse *f*; **Here's my address** Voici mon adresse; **What is the address?** Quelle est l'adresse?

admission charge l'entrée *f* **to admit** (*to hospital*) hospitaliser **adult** l'adulte *m/f*; **for**

adults pour adultes **advance in advance** à

l'avance **to advise** conseiller **A&E** les urgences

fpl **aeroplane** l'avion *m*

afraid to be afraid of avoir peur de **after** après

afternoon l'après-midi *m*; **in the afternoon** l'après-midi; **this afternoon** cet après-midi; **tomorrow afternoon** demain après-midi

afterwards après **again**
encore

against contre; **I'm against the idea** Je suis contre **age**
l'âge *m* **agency** l'agence *f*

ago a week ago il y a une semaine; **a month ago** il y a un mois **to agree** être d'accord **air** l'air *m*; **by air** en avion **air bed** le matelas pneumatique **air-conditioning** la climatisation **air-conditioning unit** le climatiseur **air freshener** le désodorisant **airline** la ligne aérienne **air mail by airmail** par avion **airplane** l'avion *m* **airport** l'aéroport *m* **aisle** le couloir **alarm** l'alarme *f* **alarm clock** le réveil **alcoholic** alcoolisé(e)
all tout; **all day** toute la journée; **all the books** tous les livres **allergic**
allergic to allergique à; **I'm allergic to...** Je suis allergique à...

to allow permettre; **It's not allowed** C'est interdit **all right (agreed)**
d'accord; (OK) bien; **Are you all right?** Ça va?

almost presque **alone**
tout(e) seul(e)

along le long de; **along the beach** le long de la plage

alphabet l'alphabet *m*

Alps les Alpes *fpl*

already déjà **also** aussi

altogether 20 euros **altogether** 20 euros en tout **always**
toujours

am du matin; **at 4 am** à quatre heures du matin

ambulance l'ambulance *f*

America l'Amérique *f*

American américain(e)

amount (total) le montant

anchovies les anchois *mpl*

and et **angry** fâché(e)

animal l'animal *m* **ankle** la
cheville

another un(e) autre; **another beer, please** une autre bière, s'il
vous plaît; **another two salads** deux autres salades

answer la réponse **to answer**
répondre à **answering machine** le
répondeur **answerphone** le
répondeur **antibiotic** l'antibiotique *m*
antifreeze l'antigel *m* **antihistamine**
l'antihistaminique *m* **antique shop** le
magasin d'antiquités **antiseptic**
l'antiseptique *m*

any du, de la, des; **Have you any apples?** Vous avez des
pommes?; **I don't play tennis any more** Je ne joue plus au tennis

anyone (*in questions*) quelqu'un; (*in negative sentences*) personne
anything (*in questions*) quelque chose; (*in negative sentences*) rien
anyway de toute façon

anywhere (*in questions*) quelque part; (*in negative sentences*) nulle
part; **You can buy them almost anywhere** Ça s'achète presque
partout

apart from à part; **apart from that...** à part ça...

apartment l'appartement *m* **apple** la pomme

application form le formulaire

appointment le rendez-vous; **I have an appointment** J'ai
rendez-vous

approximately environ

apricot l'abricot *m* **April**

avril **arm** le bras **to**

arrange arranger **to**

arrive arriver **art** l'art *m*

art gallery le musée

arthritis l'arthrite *f*

ashtray le cendrier

to ask demander; **to ask for something** demander quelque chose; **I'd like to ask you a question** J'aimerais vous poser une question

aspirin l'aspirine *f*

asthma l'asthme *m*; **I have asthma** Je suis asthmatique **at** à; **at home** à la maison; **at 8 o'clock** à huit heures; **at once** tout de suite; **at night** la nuit

attractive séduisant(e)

aubergine l'aubergine *f*

August août **aunt** la tante

Australia l'Australie *f*

Australian australien(ne)

automatic car la voiture à boîte automatique

auto-teller le distributeur automatique (de billets)

autumn l'automne *m* **available** disponible

avocado l'avocat *m* **awake to be awake** être réveillé **away far away** loin; **he's away** il est parti **awful** a reux(-euse)

axle (*in car*) l'essieu *m*

B

baby le bébé

baby food les petits pots *mpl* **baby milk** (*formula*) le lait maternisé **baby's bottle** le biberon

babysitter le/la babysitter **back** (*of body*) le dos **backpack** le sac à dos **bad** (*food, weather, news*) mauvais(e)

bag le sac; (*suitcase*) la valise **baggage** les bagages *mpl*

baggage allowance le poids (de bagages) autorisé

baggage reclaim la livraison des bagages **baker's** la boulangerie

ball (*large: football, rugby*) le ballon; (*small: golf, tennis*) la balle

banana la banane **band** (*music*) le groupe **bandage** le pansement

bank (*money*) la banque **bank account** le compte en banque

banknote le billet de banque

bar (*pub*) le bar; **a bar of chocolate** une tablette de chocolat

barbecue le barbecue; **to have a barbecue** faire un barbecue

barber's le coiffeur **basil** le basilic

bath le bain; **to have a bath** prendre un bain **bathing cap** le bonnet de bain

bathroom la salle de bains; **with bathroom** avec salle de bains

battery (*for car*) la batterie; (*for radio, camera*) la pile **to be** être

beach la plage; **on the beach** sur la plage

bean le haricot **beautiful** beau (belle)

because parce que

become to become ill tomber malade

bed le lit; **double bed** le grand lit; **single bed** le lit d'une personne; **twin beds** les lits jumeaux

bed and breakfast (*place*) la chambre d'hôte; **How much is it for bed and breakfast?** C'est combien pour la chambre et le petit déjeuner?

bedroom la chambre **beef** le bœuf **beer** la bière

before avant; **before we go** avant de partir; **I've seen this before** J'ai déjà vu ce film

to begin commencer; **to begin doing** commencer à faire
behind derrière; **behind the house** derrière la maison **beige**
beige **Belgian** belge **Belgium** la Belgique **to believe** croire
to belong to (*club*) être membre de; **That belongs to me** C'est à moi
below au-dessous de; **below our appartement** au-dessous de
chez nous

belt la ceinture

beside à côté de; **beside the bank** à côté de la banque **best** le
meilleur, la meilleure

better meilleur(e); **better than** meilleur que
between entre **bib** (*baby's*) le bavoir **bicycle** le
vélo; **by bicycle** à vélo **bicycle pump** la pompe à
vélo

big grand(e); (*car, animal, book, parcel*) gros(se)
bike (*pushbike*) le vélo; (*motorbike*) la moto **bikini** le
bikini

bill la facture; (*restaurant*) la note
bin (*dustbin*) la poubelle **Biro**® le
stylo

birthday l'anniversaire *m*; **Happy birthday!** Bon anniversaire!;
My birthday is on... Mon anniversaire c'est le...

birthday card la carte d'anniversaire **biscuits** les biscuits
mpl **bit a bit** (of) un peu (de) **bitter** amer(ère) **black**
noir(e) **black ice** le verglas **blanket** la couverture

to bleed saigner; **My nose is bleeding** Je saigne du nez **blind**
(*for window*) le store **blister** l'ampoule *f*

blocked bouché(e); **The sink is blocked** L'évier est bouché; **I**
have a blocked nose J'ai le nez bouché

block of flats l'immeuble *m* **blond**
(*person*) blond(e) **blood** le sang

blood group le groupe sanguin **blood pressure** la tension (artérielle) **blouse** le chemisier **blow-dry** le brushing
blue bleu(e); **dark blue** bleu foncé; **light blue** bleu clair **to board** (*bus, train*) monter dans; **What time are we boarding?**
 À quelle heure embarquons-nous?
boarding card la carte d'embarquement
boat le bateau; (*rowing*) la barque **boat trip** l'excursion *f* en bateau
body le corps **boiler** la chaudière **bone** l'os *m*; (*sh*) l'arête *f* **bonnet** (*of car*) le capot **book** le livre **to book** réserver
booking la réservation **booking office** le bureau de location **bookshop** la librairie **boot** (*of car*) le coffre
boots les bottes *fpl* **bored I'm bored** Je m'ennuie **boring It's boring** C'est ennuyeux
born I was born in ... Je suis né(e) en ...
to borrow Can I borrow your map? Je peux emprunter votre plan? **boss** le chef
both les deux; **I'd like both T-shirts** Je voudrais les deux t-shirts; **We both went** Nous y sommes allés tous les deux
bottle la bouteille; **a bottle of wine** une bouteille de vin; **a half-bottle of ...** une demi-bouteille de ...
bottle opener l'ouvre-bouteilles *m*
box office le bureau de location **boy** le garçon **boyfriend** le copain **bra** le soutien-gorge
bracelet le bracelet **brake** le frein **to brake** freiner **brake fluid** le liquide de freins **brake lights** les feux *mpl* de stop

brake pads les plaquettes *fpl* de freins

branch (*of bank, shop*) la succursale

brand (*make*) la marque

bread le pain; **wholemeal bread** le pain complet; **sliced bread**
le pain de mie en tranches

to break casser **breakdown** (*car*)

la panne **breakdown van** la

dépanneuse **breakfast** le petit

déjeuner **to breathe** respirer

bride la mariée **bridegroom** le

marié **bridge** le pont **briefcase** la

serviette **to bring** apporter **Britain**

la Grande-Bretagne **British**

britannique **broadband** le haut

débit **broccoli** le brocoli **brochure**

la brochure

broken cassé(e); **My leg is broken** Je me suis cassé la jambe

broken down (*car*) en panne **brooch** la broche **brother** le frère

brother-in-law le beau-frère

brown marron **bucket** le seau

bu et car (*train*) la voiture-bar

building l'immeuble *m* **bulb** (*light*)

l'ampoule *f* **bumper** (*on car*) le

pare-chocs

bunch (*of flowers*) le bouquet; (*of grapes*) la grappe

bureau de change le bureau de change **burger** le

hamburger

burglar le cambrioleur, la cambrioleuse

burglar alarm le système d'alarme **burnt**

(*food*) brûlé(e)

bus le bus; (*coach*) le car; **by bus** en car

business l'entreprise *f*; **He's got his own business** Il a sa propre

entreprise

business card la carte de visite

business class in business class en classe a aires

businessman l'homme d'a aires **business trip** le voyage

d'a aires **businesswoman** la femme d'a aires **bus pass**

la carte de bus **bus station** la gare routière **bus stop**

l'arrêt *m* de bus

busy occupé(e); **He's very busy** Il est très occupé **but**

mais **butcher's** la boucherie **butter** le beurre **button** le

bouton

to buy acheter

by (*beside*) à côté de; **by the church** à côté de l'église; **a**

painting by Picasso un tableau de Picasso; **They were caught by the**

police Ils ont été arrêtés par la police; **I have to be there by 3 o'clock**

Je dois y être avant trois heures

C

cablecar le téléphérique **café** le

café

cake (*large*) le gâteau; (*small*) la pâtisserie, le petit gâteau **cake shop**

la pâtisserie

call (*telephone*) l'appel *m*; **a long distance** call un appel à longue

distance

to call (*speak, phone*) appeler

camcorder le caméscope **camera**

l'appareil *m* photo

camera phone le téléphone portable-appareil photo **camera**

shop le magasin de photo

to camp camper **camping gas** le

butane **camping stove** le camping-

gaz® **campsite** le camping

can (*to be able to*) pouvoir; (**to know how to**) savoir; **I can't do that** Je peux pas faire ça; **I can swim** Je sais nager

can la boîte

Canada le Canada **Canadian**

canadien(ne) **to cancel**

annuler

canoeing to go canoeing faire du canoë-kayak

can opener l'ouvre-boîtes *m* **cappuccino** le

cappuccino

car la voiture; **to go by car** aller en voiture **carafe** le

pichet

car alarm l'alarme *f* de voiture

caravan la caravane **carburettor** le

carburateur

card (*greetings, business*) la carte; **playing cards** les cartes à jouer

cardigan le gilet **careful Be careful!** Fais attention! **car hire** la location de voitures **car insurance** l'assurance *f* automobile **car park** le parking

carriage (*on train*) la voiture **carrot** la carotte **to carry** porter

case (*suitcase*) la valise; **in any case** de toute façon **cash**

l'argent *m* liquide **to cash** (*cheque*) encaisser **cash desk**

la caisse

cash dispenser (*ATM*) le distributeur automatique (de billets)

cashpoint le distributeur automatique (de billets) **cassette player** le

magnétophone **castle** le château

casualty department les urgences *fpl* **cat** le

chat

to catch (*bus, train, plane*) prendre

cathedral la cathédrale **cauli ower** le

chou- eur

CD le CD

CD player le lecteur de CD **CD-ROM** le CD-ROM

ceiling le plafond **cent** (*of euro*) le centime

centimetre le centimètre

central **The hotel is very central** L'hôtel est très central **central**

heating le chauffage **central locking** le verrouillage

central centre le centre **century** le siècle **cereal** la céréale **certi**

cate le certi cat **chair** la chaise **chairlift** le télésiège

chalet le chalet

chambermaid la femme de chambre

change **I haven't got any change** Je n'ai pas de monnaie; **Can you give me change for ten euros?** Pourriez-vous me donner la monnaie de dix euros?; **Keep the change** Gardez la monnaie

to change to change 50 euros changer 50 euros; **I'm going to change my shoes** Je vais changer de chaussures; **to change trains in Paris** changer de train à Paris; **to change money** changer de l'argent

changing room la cabine d'essayage **Channel** (*English*) la Manche

charge (*fee*) le prix; **to be in charge** être responsable **to charge** (*money*) prendre; (*battery, phone*) recharger; **Please charge it to my account** Mettez ça sur mon compte s'il vous plaît; **I need to charge my phone** J'ai besoin de recharger mon téléphone

charter ight le vol charter **chatroom** le forum de discussion **cheap** bon marché

to check (*oil, level, amount*) véri er

to check in (*at airport*) se présenter à l'enregistrement; (*at hotel*) se présenter à la réception

check-in (*desk*) l'enregistrement *m* des bagages

Cheers! Santé! **cheese** le fromage **chemist's** la pharmacie **cheque** le chèque

cherry la cerise **chewing gum** le chewing-gum **chicken** le poulet
child l'enfant *m*
children les enfants; **for children** pour enfants **chilli** le piment
chips les frites *fpl* **chiropodist** le pédicure **chiropractor** le chiropracteur **chocolate** le chocolat **to choose** choisir **chop** (*meat*) la côtelette
Christian name le prénom
Christmas Noël *m*; **Merry Christmas!** Joyeux Noël!
Christmas card la carte de Noël
Christmas Eve la veille de Noël
church l'église *f* **cigar** le cigare
cigarette la cigarette **cigarette**
lighter le briquet **cinema** le cinéma **circle** (*theatre*) le balcon **city** la ville **city centre** le centre-ville
class **rst-class** la première classe; **second-class** la seconde classe
clean propre **to clean** nettoyer
cleaner (*person*) la femme de ménage **clear** (*explanation*) clair(e) **clever** intelligent(e) **client** le client, la cliente **climate** le climat **to climb** (*mountain*) escalader **climbing to go climbing** faire de l'escalade **clinic** la clinique **cloakroom** le vestiaire **clock** l'horloge *f* **close** close by proche **to close** fermer

closed (*shop, museum, restaurant*) fermé(e)
clothes les vêtements *mpl* **clothes shop** le magasin de vêtements **club** le club
clutch (*in car*) l'embrayage *m*
coach (*bus*) le car **coach trip** l'excursion *f* en car **coal** le charbon
coast la côte **coat** le manteau **coat hanger** le cintre **cockroach** le cafard **cocktail** le cocktail **code** (*dialling code*) l'indicatif *m*
co ee le café; **white co ee** le café au lait; **black co ee** le café noir; **deca einated co ee** le café décaféiné **Coke®** le Coca®
cold froid; **I'm cold** J'ai froid; **It's cold** Il fait froid; **cold water** l'eau froide
cold (*illness*) le rhume; **I have a cold** J'ai un rhume **collar** le col **colleague** le/la collègue **to collect** (*someone*) aller chercher **colour** la couleur
colour lm (*for camera*) la pellicule couleur **comb** le peigne
to come venir; (*to arrive*) arriver **to come back** revenir **to come in** entrer; Come in! Entrez! **comfortable** confortable **company** (*rm*) la compagnie, la société **compartment** (*on train*) le compartiment **compass** la boussole
to complain se plaindre; **We're going to complain to the manager** Nous allons nous plaindre au directeur
complaint (*in shop, hotel*) la plainte **complete** complet(ète) **compulsory** obligatoire **computer** l'ordinateur *m*
concert le concert **concert hall** la salle

de concert **concession** la réduction

conditioner l'après-shampooing *m*

condom le préservatif

conductor (*on bus, train*) le contrôleur **conference** la
conférence

to con rm con rmer; **Please con rm** Con rmez, s'il vous plaît

con rmation (*ight, booking*) la con rmation

Congratulations! Félicitations! **connection** (*train, plane*) la correspondance **consulate** le consulat

to consult consulter; **I need to consult my boss** Il faut que je consulte
mon patron

to contact joindre; **Where can we contact you?** Où peut-on
vous joindre? **contact lens** le

verre de contact

contact lens cleaner le produit pour nettoyer les verres de
contact

to continue continuer **contraceptive** le contraceptif

contract le contrat **convenient** **Is it convenient?** Cela
vous convient? **to cook** cuisiner **cooker** la cuisinière

cookies les gâteaux *mpl* secs **cool** frais (fraîche) **copy**
(*duplicate*) la copie **to copy** (*photocopy*) photocopier

cork le bouchon **corkscrew** le tire-bouchon

corner le coin; **the shop on the corner** le magasin au coin de la
rue

corn akes les corn- akes *mpl* **corridor** le couloir **cost** le coût **to**
cost coûter; **How much does it cost?** Ça coûte combien?

cot le lit d'enfant **cotton** le
coton

cotton wool le coton hydrophile

cough la toux **to cough** tousser

cough mixture le sirop pour la toux **counter**
(*shop, bar*) le comptoir

country (*not town*) la campagne; (*nation*) le pays; **I live in the country** J'habite à la campagne
couple (*two people*) le couple; **a couple of ...** deux ... **courgette** la courgette
courier service le service de livraisons
course (*of meal*) le plat; **rst course** l'entrée *f*; **main course** le plat principal **cousin** le cousin, la cousine **cover charge** (*in restaurant*) le couvert **crab** le crabe **crash** (*car*) l'accident *m* **crash helmet** le casque **cream** (*food, lotion*) la crème **credit** (*on mobile phone*) le crédit **credit card** la carte de crédit **crisps** les chips *fpl* **croissant** le croissant **to cross** (*road*) traverser **crowded** bondé(e) **cruise** la croisière **cucumber** le concombre **cu inks** les boutons *mpl* de manchette **cup** la tasse **cupboard** le placard **current** (*air, water*) le courant **customs** (*at border*) la douane **cut** la coupure **to cut** couper **to cycle** faire du vélo **cycle track** la piste cyclable **cycling** le cyclisme

D

daily (*each day*) tous les jours **dairy products** les produits *mpl* laitiers **damage** les dégâts *mpl*

damp humide **to dance** danser

dangerous dangereux(-euse)

dark (*colour*) foncé(e) **date** la date

date of birth la date de naissance

daughter la lle **daughter-in-law** la belle- lle

day le jour; **every day** tous les jours; **It costs 50 euros per day**

Ça coûte 50 euros par jour

dead mort(e) **deaf** sourd(e)

dear (*expensive, in letter*) cher (chère)

deca einated décaféiné(e) **December** décembre **deckchair** la chaise longue

deep profond(e) **deep freeze** le congélateur

delay le retard; **How long is the delay?** Il y a combien de retard?

delayed retardé(e) **delicatessen** l'épicerie *f* ne **delicious** délicieux(-euse)

dental oss le l dentaire **dentist** le/la dentiste **dentures** le dentier **deodorant**

le déodorant **department** le rayon

department store le grand magasin **departure lounge** la salle

d'embarquement **departures** les départs *mpl*

desk (*in hotel*) la réception; (*in airport*) le comptoir **dessert** le dessert

details personal details les coordonnées *fpl*

detergent le détergent **to develop** (*photos*) faire développer

diabetic diabétique; **I'm diabetic** Je suis diabétique **to**

dial (*a number*) composer **dialling code** l'indicatif *m*

dialling tone la tonalité **diarrhoea** la diarrhée **dictionary**

le dictionnaire **diesel** le gas-oil

diet I'm on a diet Je suis au régime; **special diet** le régime spécial

different différent(e)

difficult difficile

digital camera l'appareil *m* photo numérique

dining room (*in hotel*) la salle de restaurant; (*in house*) la salle à manger

dinner (*evening meal*) le dîner; **to have dinner** dîner **direct** (*train, flight*) direct(e)

directions to ask for directions demander le chemin

directory phone directory l'annuaire *m* **directory**

enquiries les renseignements *mpl* **dirty** sale **disabled**

handicapé(e) **to disagree** ne pas être d'accord

disco la discothèque **discount** le

rabais **dish** le plat **dishwasher** le

lave-vaisselle **disinfectant** le

désinfectant **disk floppy disk** la

disquette **to dislocate** (*joint*)

disloquer **disposable** jetable

distilled water l'eau distillée

district (*of town*) le quartier; (*of country*) la région **divorced**

divorcé(e)

dizzy I feel dizzy J'ai la tête qui tourne **to do**
faire **doctor** le médecin **documents** les
papiers *mpl* **dog** le chien **dollar** le dollar
domestic domestic ight le vol intérieur **door** la
porte
double double; **double bed** le grand lit; **double room** la
chambre pour deux personnes
down to go down the stairs descendre les escaliers **to**
download télécharger
downstairs en bas; **the at downstairs** l'appartement du
dessous
draught There's a draught Il y a un courant d'air
draught lager la bière pression **drawing** le dessin **dress**
la robe
to dress s'habiller
dressed to get dressed s'habiller
drink la boisson **to drink** boire
drinking water l'eau *f* potable **to**
drive conduire
driver le conducteur, la conductrice
driving licence le permis de conduire **dry**
sec (sèche) **to dry** sécher **dry-cleaner's** le
pressing
due When is the rent due? Quand faut-il payer le loyer?; **When is the**
train due to arrive? À quelle heure le train doit-il arriver?
during pendant **dust** la
poussière **duster** le chi on à
poussière **duty-free** hors taxe
duvet la couette
DVD le DVD
DVD player le lecteur de DVD

E

each chacun, chacune

ear l'oreille *f*

earache I have earache J'ai mal à l'oreille/aux oreilles **earlier** plus tôt; **I saw him earlier** Je l'ai vu tout à l'heure; **Is**

there an earlier ight? Y a-t-il un vol plus tôt? **early** tôt

earphones le casque **earrings** les boucles *fpl* d'oreille

east l'est *m* **Easter**

Pâques **easy** facile **to**

eat manger **ecological** écologique

egg l'œuf *m*; **fried eggs** les œufs sur le plat; **hard-boiled egg**

l'œuf dur; **scrambled eggs** les œufs brouillés; **soft-boiled egg** l'œuf à la coque

eggplant l'aubergine *f*

either I've never been to Corsica – I haven't either Je ne suis jamais allé en Corse – Moi non plus

Elastoplast® le sparadrap **electric** électrique

electric blanket la couverture chaude

electrician l'électricien *m* **electric razor** le rasoir électrique **electronic** électronique

electronic organiser l'agenda *m* électronique **elevator** l'ascenseur *m*

email le e-mail; **to email sb** envoyer un e-mail à qn **email address** l'adresse électronique; (*on forms*) le mél **embassy**

l'ambassade *f* **emergency** l'urgence *f* **empty** vide

end la fin

engaged (*to be married*) ancé(e); (*phone, toilet*) occupé(e) **engine** le moteur

England l'Angleterre *f*

English anglais(e); (*language*) l'anglais *m*

Englishman l'Anglais **Englishwoman**
l'Anglaise

to enjoy aimer; **I enjoy swimming** J'aime nager; **I enjoy**

dancing J'aime danser; **Enjoy your meal!** Bon appétit! **enough** assez;

I haven't got enough money Je n'ai pas assez

d'argent; **That's enough** Ça suffit

enquiry desk les renseignements *mpl*

to enter entrer **entrance** l'entrée *f*

entrance fee le prix d'entrée **envelope**

l'enveloppe *f* **equipment** l'équipement *m*

escalator l'escalator *m* **essential**

indispensable **estate agent's** l'agence *f*
immobilière

euro l'euro *m* **Europe**

l'Europe *f* **European**

européen(ne)

even even on Sundays même le dimanche; **even though, even**

if même si; **even if it rains** même s'il pleut

evening le soir; **this evening** ce soir; **tomorrow evening** demain soir; **in**

the evening le soir; **at 7 o'clock in the evening** à sept heures du soir

evening meal le dîner **every** chaque;

every time chaque fois **everyone** tout le

monde **everything** tout **everywhere**

partout

examination (*school, medical*) l'examen *m*

example for example par exemple **excellent**

excellent(e)

except for sauf; **except for me** sauf moi **exchange in exchange for** en échange de **to exchange** échanger
exchange rate le taux de change **excursion** l'excursion *f*
excuse Excuse me! Excusez-moi!; (*to get by*) Pardon!
exhaust pipe le pot d'échappement **exhibition**
l'exposition *f* **exit** la sortie **expensive** cher (chère) **to expire** (*ticket, passport*) expirer **to explain** expliquer
express (*train*) le rapide
express to send a letter express envoyer une lettre en exprès **expresso**
l'expresso *m*
extra (*in addition*) supplémentaire; **Can you give me an extra blanket?** Pouvez-vous me donner une couverture supplémentaire?;
There's an extra charge Il y a un supplément
eye l'œil *m* **eyeliner** l'eye-liner *m*
eye shadow le fard à paupières

F

fabric le tissu **face**
le visage **fair** (*hair*)
blond(e); **That's not fair** Ce n'est pas juste **fair**
(*funfair*) la fête
foraine; **a trade fair**
une foire
commerciale **fake**
faux (fausse) **fall**
(*autumn*)
l'automne *m*
to fall over tomber; **He fell over** Il est tombé
family la famille **famous** célèbre
fan (*handheld*) l'éventail *m*; (*electric*) le ventilateur; **I'm a jazz**

fan Je suis un fan de jazz; **She's a U2 fan** C'est une fan de U2;
He's a Liverpool fan C'est un supporter de Liverpool **far** loin;
Is it far? C'est loin?; **How far is it?** C'est loin?
farm la ferme **farmhouse** la
ferme **fashionable** à la mode
fast rapide; **too fast** trop vite
fat (*plump*) gros (grosse); (*in food, on person*) la graisse
father le père **father-in-law** le beau-père
fault (*defect*) un défaut; **It's not my fault** Ce n'est pas de ma
faute
favourite préféré(e) **fax** le
fax; **by fax** par fax
to fax (*document*) faxer; **to fax someone** envoyer un fax à
quelqu'un
February février **to**
feed nourrir
to feel sentir; **I feel sick** J'ai la nausée; **I don't feel well** Je ne
me sens pas bien
ferry le ferry **festival** le
festival **to fetch** aller
chercher
few with a few friends avec quelques amis; **few tourists** peu de
touristes
ancé le ancé **ancée**
la ancée **g** la gue
le (*computer*) le chier **to ll**
remplir **to ll in** (*form*)
remplir
to ll up (*with petrol*) faire le plein; **Fill it up please!** (*car*) Le plein s'il
vous plaît!
llet le let

lling (*in tooth*) le plombage

lm (*at cinema*) le lm; (*for camera*) la pellicule **to nd**
trouver

ne (*to be paid*) la contravention

nger le doigt **to nish** nir

nished ni(e)

re (*electric, gas*) le radiateur; (*open, accidental*) le feu **re**

alarm l'alarme f d'incendie **rm** la compagnie **rst**

premier(ière) **rst aid** les premiers secours *mpl*

rst class de première classe; **to travel rst class** voyager en
première classe

rst name le prénom **sh**

(*food*) le poisson **to sh**

pêcher

shing la pêche

shmonger's le marchand de poisson, la marchande de poisson **to t**

(*clothes*) **It doesn't t me** Ça ne me va pas **tting room** le salon

d'essayage **to x** (*repair*) réparer

zzy gazeux(euse); **zzy water** l'eau gazeuse **ash** (*for*

camera) le ash **ask** (*thermos*) le Thermos® **at**

(*apartment*) l'appartement *m* **at** (*battery*) à plat;

It's at (*beer*) C'est éventé **at tyre** le pneu creuvé

avour (*taste*) le goût; **Which avour?** (*of ice cream*) Quel

parfum? **aw** le défaut

eas les puces *fpl* **esh** la

chair **ex** (*electrical*) le l

ight le vol **ippers** les

palmes *fpl*

oor (*of room*) le sol; (*of building*) l'étage *m*; **Which oor?** Quel

étage?; **on the ground oor** au rez-de-chaussée; **on the rst oor** au

premier étage; **on the second oor** au deuxième étage

oppy disk la disquette

our la farine

ower la eur **u** la

grippe

y la mouche

to y (*person*) aller en avion; (*bird*) voler

y sheet le double toit **fog** le

brouillard

foggy It's foggy Il y a du brouillard **food** la

nourriture

foot le pied; **to go on foot** aller à pied **football** le

football

football match le match de football

for pour; **for me** pour moi; **for you** pour toi, pour vous; **for ve** euros

pour cinq euros; **I've been here for two weeks** Ça fait deux semaines

que je suis ici; **She'll be away for a month** Elle sera absente pendant

un mois

foreign étranger(ère) **foreigner**

l'étranger, l'étrangère **forever** pour

toujours

to forget oublier; **I've forgotten his name** J'ai oublié son nom;

to forget to do oublier de faire

fork (*for eating*) la fourchette

form (*document*) le formulaire

fortnight quinze jours **forward** en

avant

four-wheel drive vehicle le quatre-quatre **France** la

France; **in/to France** en France

free (*not occupied*) libre; (*costing nothing*) gratuit(e); **Is this seat**

free? Ce siège est libre? **freezer** le

congélateur

French français(e); (*language*) le français

French fries les frites *fpl* **French people** les Français *mpl* **frequent** fréquent(e) **fresh** frais (fraîche)
Friday vendredi **fridge** le frigo **fried** frit(e) **friend** l'ami *m*, l'amie *f* **friendly** gentil(le) **frog** la grenouille
frogs' legs les cuisses *fpl* de grenouille
from de; **Where are you from?** Vous êtes d'où?; **from nine o'clock** à partir de neuf heures
front le devant; **in front of** devant
frozen (*food*) surgelé(e) **fruit** le fruit
fruit juice le jus de fruit **fruit salad** la salade de fruits **frying-pan** la poêle
fuel (*petrol*) l'essence *f* **fuel tank** le réservoir d'essence
full (*tank, glass*) plein(e); (*restaurant, hotel*) complet(ète) **full board** la pension complète **funfair** la fête foraine **funny** amusant(e) **furnished** meublé(e) **furniture** les meubles *mpl*

G

gallery la galerie **game** le jeu **garage** (*for petrol*) la station-service; (*for parking, repair*) le garage
garden le jardin **garlic** l'ail *m* **gas** le gaz **gas cooker** la gazinière **gas cylinder** la bouteille de gaz **gate** la porte **gay** (*person*) homo

gear la vitesse; **rst gear** la première; **second gear** la seconde;
third gear la troisième; **fourth gear** la quatrième; **reverse gear** la
marche arrière

gearbox la boîte de vitesses

gents (*toilet*) les toilettes *fpl* (pour hommes) **genuine**
authentique

to get (*to have, to receive*) avoir; (*to fetch*) aller chercher

to get in (*vehicle*) monter **to**

get out (*vehicle*) sortir **gift** le
cadeau

gift shop la boutique de souvenirs

girl la lle **girlfriend** la copine **to give**

donner **to give back** rendre

glass (*for drinking, material*) le verre; **a glass of water** un verre
d'eau; **a glass of wine** un verre de vin

glasses (*spectacles*) les lunettes *fpl* **gloves**
les gants *mpl*

to go aller; **to go home** rentrer à la maison

to go back retourner

to go in entrer **to go**

out sortir **God** Dieu *m*

goggles (*for swimming*) les lunettes *fpl* de natation; (*for skiing*) les
lunettes *fpl* de ski

golf le golf **golf ball** la balle de

golf **golf clubs** les clubs *mpl* de

golf **golf course** le terrain de golf

good bon (bonne); **very good** très bien; **good afternoon**

bonjour; **good evening** bonsoir; **good morning** bonjour; **good night**
bonne nuit

goodbye au revoir **good-looking** beau,

bel (belle) **gram(me)** le gramme

grandchildren les petits-enfants *mpl*

[Your Click Matters](#)

granddaughter la petite- lle **grandfather**
le grand-père **grandmother** la grand-
mère **grandparents** les grands-parents
mpl **grandson** le petit- ls **grapefruit** le
pamplemousse **grapes** le raisin **grated**
(*cheese*) râpé(e) **greasy** gras(se)
great (*wonderful*) formidable **Great**
Britain la Grande-Bretagne **green**
vert(e)
greengrocer's le magasin de fruits et légumes **grey**
gris(e)
grill (*part of cooker*) le gril
grilled grillé(e) **grocer's**
l'épicerie *f*
ground oor le rez-de-chaussée; **on the ground oor** au rez-de-
chaussée
groundsheet le tapis de sol
group le groupe **guarantee** la
garantie **guesthouse** la
pension **guide** (*person*) le/la
guide **guidebook** le guide
guided tour la visite guidée
guitar la guitare
gums (*in mouth*) les gencives *fpl* **gym**
(*gymnasium*) le gymnase **gynecologist**
le/la gynécologue

H

hair les cheveux *mpl* **haircut** la coupe
(de cheveux) **hairstylist** le coiffeur, la
coiffeuse **hairdryer** le sèche-cheveux

half la moitié; **half of the cake** la moitié du gâteau; **half an hour** une demi-heure

half board la demi-pension **half fare** le demi-tarif

ham (*cooked*) le jambon; (*cured*) le jambon cru **hamburger** le hamburger **hand** la main **handbag** le sac à main **handicapped** handicapé(e) **handlebars** le guidon **hand luggage** les bagages *mpl* à main **handsome** beau, bel (belle) **hangover** la gueule de bois **to hang up** (*telephone*) raccrocher **to happen** **What happened?** Qu'est-ce qui s'est passé? **happy** heureux(-euse) **happy birthday!** bon anniversaire!

harbour le port

hard (*not soft*) dur(e); (*not easy*) difficile

hardly I've hardly got any money Je n'ai presque pas d'argent

hardware shop la quincaillerie **hat** le chapeau

to have avoir; **I have ...** J'ai ...; **I don't have ...** Je n'ai pas ...;

to have to devoir; **I've done it** Je l'ai fait; **I'll have a coffee**

Je vais prendre un café **hay**

fever le rhume des foies **he** il

head la tête

headache le mal de tête; **I have a headache** J'ai mal à la tête

headlights les phares **headphones** les écouteurs **to hear** entendre

heart le cœur

heart attack la crise cardiaque

heartburn les brûlures *fp/* d'estomac

heater l'appareil *m* de chauffage **heating**

le chauffage **heavy** lourd(e) **heel** le talon

hello bonjour!; (*on telephone*) allô?

helmet le casque **to help** aider; **Can you help me?** Vous pouvez m'aider?; **Help!** Au secours! **her** la, l'; lui; elle (*belonging to her*) son, sa, ses (*agrees with the*

noun that follows); **I saw her last night** Je l'ai vue hier soir; **I don't know her** Je ne la connais pas; **I gave her the book** Je lui ai donné le livre; **with her** avec elle; **I'm older than her** Je suis plus âgé qu'elle; **her passport** son passeport; **her room** sa chambre; **her suitcases** ses valises

here ici; **Here is ...** Voici ...; **Here's my passport** Voici mon passeport **Hi!** Salut! **high** haut(e)

hill la colline

hill-walking la randonnée en montagne

him le, l'; lui **I saw him last night** Je l'ai vu hier soir; **I don't know him** Je ne le connais pas; **I gave him the letter** Je lui ai donné la lettre; **with him** avec lui

hip la hanche

hire car hire la location de voitures; **bike hire** la location de vélos; **boat hire** la location de bateaux; **ski hire** la location de skis

to hire louer

hired car la voiture de location

his son, sa, ses (*agrees with the noun that follows*); **his passport** son passeport; **his room** sa chambre; **his suitcases** ses valises

historic historique

hobby le passe-temps; **What hobbies do you have?** Quels sont tes passe-temps? **to hold** tenir;

(*contain*) contenir **hole** le trou

holiday les vacances *fpl*; (*public*) le jour férié; **on holiday** en vacances

holiday rep le/la guide touristique **home** la maison; **at home** à la maison

homeopathic homéopathique **honey** le miel **honeymoon** la lune de miel

to hope espérer; **I hope so** J'espère que oui; **I hope not** J'espère que non

hors d'œuvre le hors-d'œuvre **horse racing**
les courses *fpl* de chevaux **horse-riding**
l'équitation *f* **hospital** l'hôpital *m*
hostel (*youth hostel*) l'auberge *f* de jeunesse
hot chaud(e); **hot water** l'eau chaude; **I'm hot** J'ai chaud; **It's**
hot (*weather*) Il fait chaud
hotel l'hôtel *m*
hour l'heure *f*; **half an hour** une demi-heure
house la maison **housewife** la femme au foyer
house wine le vin en pichet
how (*in what way*) **comment**; **How much/many?** Combien?; **How are**
you? Comment allez-vous?
hungry to be hungry avoir faim **hurry I'm**
in a hurry Je suis pressé
to hurt **Have you hurt yourself?** Tu t'es fait mal?; **My back**
hurts J'ai mal au dos; **That hurts** Ça fait mal
husband le mari

I

I je

ice la glace; **ice cube** le glaçon; **with/without ice** avec/sans glaçons
ice box (*for picnics*) la glacière; (*in fridge*) le compartiment à
glace
ice cream la glace **ice**
lolly l'esquimau *m* **idea**
l'idée *f* **if** si
ignition l'allumage *m* **ignition**
key la clé de contact **ill** malade

illness la maladie **immediately** immédiatement

immersion heater le chauffe-eau électrique

immobilizer (*on car*) le dispositif antidémarrage

to import importer

important important(e)

impossible impossible **to**

improve améliorer

in dans; en; au, à; **in ten** minutes dans dix minutes; **in France** en France; **in Canada** au Canada; **in London** à Londres; **in the**

hotel à l'hôtel; **in front of** devant

included compris(e) **indicator** (*in car*) le

clignotant **indigestion** l'indigestion *f* **infection**

l'infection *f* **information** les renseignements

mpl **information desk** les renseignements

mpl **inhale** (*for medication*) l'inhalateur *m*

injection la piqûre **injured** blessé(e) **injury** la

blessure **inn** l'auberge *f*

inquiry desk le bureau de renseignements **insect**

l'insecte *m*

insect repellent le produit antimoustiques **inside** à

l'intérieur

instant instant coffee le café instantané

instead instead of au lieu de **insulin**

l'insuline *f* **insurance** l'assurance *f*

insurance certificate l'attestation *f* d'assurance **to**

insure assurer **insured** assuré(e)

intend to intend to avoir l'intention de

interesting intéressant(e) **international**

international(e)

internet l'Internet *m*; **on the internet** sur Internet; **internet café** le

cybercafé; **Do you have internet access?** Vous avez accès à

l'Internet?

interpreter l'interprète *m/f* **interval**

(*theatre*) l'entracte *m*

into dans; en; **to get into a car** monter dans une voiture; **to go**

into the cinema entrer dans le cinéma; **to go into town** aller en ville

to introduce présenter

invitation l'invitation *f* **to**

invite inviter **invoice** la

facture **Ireland** l'Irlande *f*

Irish irlandais(e); (*language*) l'irlandais *m*

iron (*for clothes*) le fer à repasser **to iron**

repasser

ironing board la planche à repasser **ironmonger's** la

quincaillerie

island l'île *f*

it il, elle

itchy It's itchy Ça me démange

J

jack (*for car*) le cric

jacket la veste; **waterproof jacket** l'anorak *m* **jam**

(*food*) la confiture **jammed** coincé(e) **January**

janvier **jar** (*of honey, jam*) le pot **jeans** le jean **jelly**

(*dessert*) la gelée

jet ski le jet-ski **jeweller's**

la bijouterie **jewellery** les

bijoux *mpl* **Jewish** juif

(juive) **job** le travail **to jog**

faire du jogging **to join**

(*club*) s'inscrire à **journey**

le voyage

juice le jus; **a carton of juice** un carton de jus **July**

juillet **jumper** le pull

jump leads les câbles *mpl* de raccordement pour batterie **June** juin

just **just two** deux seulement; **I've just arrived** Je viens d'arriver

to keep (*retain*) garder

K

kettle la bouilloire **key** la clé **kid** (*child*) le gosse

kidneys les reins *mpl* **kilo(gram)** le kilo **kilometre**

le kilomètre **kind** (*person*) gentil(le) **kind** (*sort*) la

sorte; **What kind?** Quelle sorte? **to kiss** embrasser

kitchen la cuisine

knee le genou **knickers** la

culotte **knife** le couteau

to know (*facts*) savoir; (*person, place*) connaître; **I don't know** Je ne sais pas; **I don't know** Paris Je ne connais pas Paris; **to know how to**

do sth savoir faire quelque chose; **to know how to swim** savoir nager

L

label l'étiquette *f* **lace**

(*fabric*) la dentelle

ladies (*toilet*) les toilettes *fpl* (pour dames) **lady** la

dame

lager la bière; **bottled lager** la bière en bouteille; **draught lager** la bière pression

lake le lac **lamb** l'agneau *m* **lamp** la

lampe **to land** atterrir **landlady** la

propriétaire **landlord** le propriétaire
landslide le glissement de terrain **lane**
la ruelle; (*of motorway*) la voie
language la langue
language school l'école *f* de langues
laptop le portable **large** grand(e)
last dernier(ière); **the last bus** le dernier bus; **the last train** le dernier train; **last time** la dernière fois; **last week** la semaine dernière; **last year** l'année dernière; **last night** (*evening*) hier soir; (*night-time*) la nuit dernière
late tard; **The train is late** Le train a du retard; **Sorry we are late** Excusez-nous d'arriver en retard
later plus tard **to**
laugh rire
laundrette la laverie automatique **laundry service** le service de blanchisserie **lavatory** les toilettes *fp/* **lavender** la lavande **lawyer** l'avocat *m*, l'avocate *f* **lead** (*electric*) le l **leak** la fuite
to leak **It's leaking** Il y a une fuite **to**
learn apprendre **lease** (*rental*) le bail
least at least au moins **leather** le cuir
to leave (*a place*) partir; (*to leave behind*) laisser; **I left it at home** Je l'ai laissé à la maison; **What time does the train leave?** À quelle heure le train part-il? **leek** le poireau **left** on/to the left à gauche
left-luggage locker la consigne automatique **left-luggage office** la consigne **leg** la jambe **legal** légal(e)
leisure centre le centre de loisirs **lemon** le citron
lemonade la limonade
to lend prêter; **Can you lend me your pen?** Tu peux me prêter

ton stylo? **lens** (*of camera*) l'objectif *m* (*contact lens*) la lentille **less** moins; **less than me** moins que moi; A **bit less, please** Un peu moins, s'il vous plaît

lesson la leçon

to let (*to allow*) permettre; (*to hire out*) louer

letter la lettre **letterbox** la boîte aux lettres

lettuce la laitue **licence** le permis **to lie down** s'allonger

lift (*elevator*) l'ascenseur *m*; **Can you give me a lift to the swimming pool?** Vous pouvez me déposer à la piscine? **lift**

pass (*skiing*) le forfait **light** (*not heavy*) léger(ère) **light** la lumière; **Have you got a light?** Avez-vous du feu? **light bulb** l'ampoule *f* **lighter** le briquet **lighthouse** le phare **lightning** les éclairs *mpl*

like (*similar to*) comme; **a city like Paris** une ville comme Paris **to like** aimer; **I like coffee** J'aime le café; **I don't like ...** Je n'aime pas ...; **I'd like to ...** Je voudrais ...

lilo[®] le matelas pneumatique **lime** (*fruit*) le citron vert

line (*queue*) la le; (*row, telephone*) la ligne **linen** le lin

lingerie la lingerie **lips** les lèvres *fpl* **lipstick** le rouge à lèvres **to listen to** écouter

litre le litre

little petit(e); a little un peu

to live (*in a place*) habiter; **I live in London** J'habite à Londres **liver** le foie **living room** le salon **loaf** le pain **lobster** le homard **local** local(e)

lock (*on door, box*) la serrure **to lock** fermer à clé **locker** (*for luggage*) le casier **locksmith** le serrurier **log** (*for re*) la bûche **logbook** (*for car*) la carte grise

lollipop la sucette

London Londres; **to/in London** à Londres **long**

long(ue); **for a long time** longtemps **long-**

sighted hypermétrope **to look after** garder **to**

look at regarder **to look for** chercher

loose (*not fastened*) desserré(e); **It's come loose** (*unscrewed*) Ça

s'est desserré; (*detached*) Ça s'est détaché

lorry le camion **to**

lose perdre **lost**

(*object*) perdu(e);

I've lost ... J'ai

perdu ...; **I'm lost**

Je suis

perdu(e)

lost property office le bureau des objets trouvés **lot a lot of**, lots

of beaucoup de; **a lot of people** beaucoup de

monde; **a lot of fruit** beaucoup de fruits

lotion la lotion **loud**

fort(e)

loudspeaker le haut-parleur **lounge** (*in*

hotel, airport) le salon **love** l'amour

to love (*person*) aimer; (*food, activity*) adorer; **I love you** Je

t'aime; **I love swimming** J'adore nager

lovely beau, bel (belle) **low**

bas(se)

lucky chanceux(-euse); **to be lucky** avoir de la chance **luggage** les

bagages *mpl*

luggage allowance le poids maximum autorisé

luggage rack le porte-bagages **luggage tag**

l'étiquette *f* à bagages **luggage trolley** le chariot (à

bagages) **lump** (*swelling*) la bosse **lunch** le déjeuner

lung le poumon **luxury** le luxe

M

mad fou (folle) **magazine** la

revue **maid** (*in hotel*) la

domestique **maiden name** le

nom de jeune lle **mail** le

courrier; **by mail** par la poste

main principal(e)

main course (*of meal*) le plat principal

main road la route principale **make**

(*brand*) la marque **to make** faire; **made of**

wood en bois **make-up** le maquillage

man l'homme *m*

to manage (*to be in charge of*) gérer

manager le directeur, la directrice

manageress la directrice **manicure** les

soins *mpl* de manucure **manual** (*gear*

change) manuel(le) **many** beaucoup de

map (*of region, country*) la carte; (*of town*) le plan; **road map** la

carte routière; **street map** le plan de la ville

March mars **margarine** la margarine **marina** la

marina **mark** (*stain*) la tache

market le marché; **Where is the market?** Où est le marché?; **When is**

the market? Le marché, c'est quel jour?

marmalade la marmelade d'oranges

married marié(e); **I'm married** Je suis marié(e); **Are you**

married? Vous êtes marié(e)?

mass (*in church*) la messe

massage le massage **match**

(*game*) le match **matches** les

allumettes *fpl* **material**

(*cloth*) le tissu **to matter** **It**

doesn't matter Ça ne fait

[Your Click Matters](#)

rien; **What's the matter?**

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a? **mattress**

le matelas **May** mai

mayonnaise la mayonnaise

mayor le maire **maximum** le

maximum

me me, m'; moi; **Can you hear me?** Vous m'entendez?; **He**

scares me Il me fait peur; **It's me** C'est moi; **without me** sans moi;

with me avec moi

meal le repas

to mean vouloir dire; **What does this mean?** Qu'est-ce que ça

veut dire? **meat** la viande **medicine**

le médicament **Mediterranean Sea** la

Méditerranée **medium** (*size*) moyen(ne)

medium rare (*meat*) à point

medium sweet demi-doux

to meet (*by chance*) rencontrer; (*by arrangement*) voir; **I'm**

meeting her tomorrow Je la vois demain

meeting la réunion **melon** le

melon **member** (*of club*) le

membre **to mend** réparer

menu la carte; **set menu** le menu

message le message **metal** le métal

meter le compteur **metre**

le mètre

microwave oven le four à micro-ondes **midday**

midi; **at midday** à midi

middle le milieu; **in the middle of the street** au milieu de la

rue; **in the middle of May** en plein mois de mai

middle-aged d'une cinquantaine d'années

midge le moucheron

midnight minuit; **at midnight** à minuit

migraine la migraine; **I have a migraine** J'ai la migraine **mild** (*weather, cheese*) doux (douce); (*curry*) peu épicé(e) **milk** le lait; **with/without milk** avec/sans lait; **fresh milk** le lait frais; **hot milk** le lait chaud; **long-life milk** le lait longue conservation; **powdered milk** le lait en poudre; **soya milk** le lait de soja

milkshake le milk-shake

millimetre le millimètre **mince** (*meat*) la viande hachée

to mind Do you mind if I...? Ça vous gêne si je...?; **I don't mind** Ça m'est égal

mineral water l'eau minérale

minidisc le minidisque **minimum** le minimum **minute** la minute

mirror le miroir; (*in car*) le rétroviseur

Miss Mademoiselle **to miss** (*train, ight*) rater

missing (*disappeared*) disparu(e); **My son is missing** Mon ls a disparu **mistake**

l'erreur **f to mix** mélanger

mobile number le numéro de portable

mobile phone le portable **modem** le modem **modern** moderne **moisturizer** la crème hydratante

moment at the moment en ce moment; **just a moment** un instant

monastery le monastère

Monday lundi **money** l'argent *m*

month le mois; **this month** ce mois-ci; **last month** le mois dernier; **next month** le mois prochain

moped le vélomoteur

more plus; **more expensive** plus cher; **more than before** plus qu'avant;

more wine plus de vin; **more than 10** plus de dix;

Do you want some more tea? Voulez-vous encore du thé?;

There isn't any more Il n'en reste plus **morning** le matin; **in the morning** le matin; **this morning** ce

matin; **tomorrow morning** demain matin

mosque la mosquée **mosquito** le

moustique

mosquito repellent le produit antimoustiques

most le plus **the most interesting** le plus intéressant; **most of the time**

la plupart du temps; **most people** la plupart des gens

mother la mère **mother-in-law** la

belle-mère **motor** le moteur

motorbike la moto **motorboat** le

bateau à moteur **motorway**

l'autoroute *f* **mountain** la

montagne

mountain bike le VTT, le vélo tout-terrain

mountaineering l'alpinisme *m* **mouse** la souris

mouth la bouche **to move** bouger **movie** le lm

Mr Monsieur; **Mr Dupond** M. Dupond

Mrs Madame; **Mrs Leclerc** Mme Leclerc

Ms Madame

much beaucoup; **too much** trop; **too much money** trop

d'argent; **I feel much better** Je me sens beaucoup mieux

mugging l'agression *f* **museum** le

musée **mushrooms** les champignons

mpl

music la musique **Muslim**

musulman(e) **mussels** les

moules *fpl*

must I must buy some presents Il faut que j'achète des cadeaux

mustard la moutarde

my mon, ma, mes (*agrees with the noun that follows*); **my**

passport mon passeport; **my room** ma chambre; **my suitcases** mes valises

N

nail (*metal*) le clou; (*nger*) l'ongle *m* **nail** le la

lime à ongles

name le nom; **My name is...** Je m'appelle...; **What is your name?**

Comment vous appelez-vous? **nanny** la garde d'enfants; **We have a**

nanny Nous avons une

dame qui vient garder les enfants à la maison

napkin la serviette de table

nappy la couche **narrow**

étroit(e) **nationality** la

nationalité **natural** naturel(le)

nature reserve la réserve naturelle **navy**

blue bleu marine

near près de; **near the bank** près de la banque; **Is it near?** C'est

près d'ici?

necessary nécessaire

neck le cou **necklace** le

collier **nectarine** le

brugnon

to need (to) avoir besoin de; **I need** j'ai besoin de; **we need**

nous avons besoin de; **I need to phone** J'ai besoin de téléphoner

needle l'aiguille *f*; **a needle and thread** du I et une aiguille **negative** (*photo*) le négatif **neighbours** les voisins *mpl* **nephew** le neveu **net** **the Net** le Net **neutral** (*gear*) le point mort

never jamais; **I never drink wine** Je ne bois jamais de vin **new** nouveau (nouvelle) **news** (*TV, radio*) les informations *fpl* **newsagent's** le marchand de journaux

newspaper le journal **news**
stand le kiosque

New Year le Nouvel An; **Happy New Year!** Bonne année!

New Year's Eve la Saint-Sylvestre **New Zealand** la Nouvelle-Zélande

next prochain(e); (*after*) ensuite; **the next train** le prochain train; **the next stop** le prochain arrêt; **next week** la semaine prochaine; **next Monday** lundi prochain; **next to** à côté de;

What did you do next? Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait ensuite?

nice (*kind*) gentil(le); (*pretty*) joli(e); (*good*) bon(ne) **niece** la nièce

night (*night-time*) la nuit; (*evening*) le soir; **at night** la nuit; **per night** par nuit; **last night** (*evening*) hier soir; (*night-time*) la nuit dernière; **tomorrow night** (*evening*) demain soir; (*nighttime*) la nuit prochaine; **tonight** (*evening*) ce soir; (*night-time*) cette nuit

nightclub la boîte de nuit

no non; (*without*) sans; **no thanks** non merci; **no smoking** défense de fumer; **no problem** pas de problème; **no ice** sans glaçons; **no sugar** sans sucre; **There's no hot water** Il n'y a pas d'eau chaude

nobody personne; **Nobody came** Personne n'est venu **noise** le bruit

noisy **It's very noisy** Il y a beaucoup de bruit **non-alcoholic** sans alcool **none** aucun(e)

non-smoking (*seat, compartment*) non-fumeurs **normally** (*usually*) généralement; (*as normal*) normalement **north** le nord

Northern Ireland l'Irlande *f* du Nord **nose** le nez

nosebleed to have a nosebleed saigner du nez **not** ne pas; **I am not going** Je n'y vais pas **note** (*banknote*) le billet; (*written*) le mot **note pad** le bloc-notes

nothing rien; **nothing else** rien d'autre

notice **There's a notice on the door** C'est a ché sur la porte **November** novembre

now maintenant; **now and then** de temps en temps **number** (*quantity*) le nombre; (*of room, house*) le numéro; **phone**

number le numéro de téléphone

numberplate (*of car*) la plaque d'immatriculation

nurse l'infirmier *m*, l'infirmière *f* **nursery slope** la piste pour débutants **nuts** (*to eat*) les noix et les arachides
fpl **to obtain** obtenir

O

occasionally de temps en temps **occupation** (*work*) la profession **October** octobre

of de; **a glass of wine** un verre de vin; **made of cotton** en coton

o (*light, heater*) éteint(e); (*tap, gas*) fermé(e); (*milk*) tourné(e);

I'm o Je m'en vais **o**

ce le bureau

often souvent; **How often do you go to the gym?** Tu vas à la gym tous les combien?

oil l'huile *f*

oil gauge la jauge de niveau d'huile **OK!** d'accord!

old vieux, vieil (vieille); **How old are you?** Quel âge avez-

[Your Click Matters](#)

vous?; **I'm... years old** J'ai... ans

old-age pensioner le retraité, la retraitée

olive l'olive *f* **olive oil** l'huile *f* d'olive

on (*TV, light*) allumé(e); (*tap, gas*) ouvert(e); (*engine*) en marche **on** sur; **on the table** sur la table; **on the TV** à la télé; **on the**

second floor au deuxième étage; **on Friday** vendredi; **on**

Fridays le vendredi; on time à l'heure **once** une fois; **once a week** une fois par semaine; **at once** tout

de suite

onion l'oignon *m*

only seulement; **How much was it? – Only 10 euros** C'était combien? –

Seulement dix euros; **We only want to stay for one night** Nous ne voulons rester qu'une nuit; **the only day**

I'm free le seul jour où je suis libre

open ouvert(e) **to open** ouvrir

opening hours les heures *fpl* d'ouverture **opera**

l'opéra *m*

operation (*surgical*) l'opération *f* **operator**

(*phone*) le/la standardiste

opposite en face de; **opposite the bank** en face de la banque;

quite the opposite bien au contraire

optician l'opticien, l'opticienne

or ou; **Tea or coffee?** Du thé ou du café?; **I don't eat meat or**

fish Je ne mange ni viande ni poisson

orange (*fruit*) l'orange *f* (*colour*) orange

orange juice le jus d'orange **order out of**

order en panne

to order (*in restaurant*) commander; **I'd like to order** Je

voudrais commander

organic biologique **to**

organize organiser

ornament le bibelot

other autre; **the other car** l'autre voiture; **the other one** l'autre; **Have you any others?** Vous en avez d'autres? **ought I ought to call my parents** Je devrais appeler mes parents

our (*sing*) notre; (*plural*) nos; **our room** notre chambre; **our passports** nos passeports; **our baggage** nos bagages

out (*light*) éteint(e); **She's out** Elle est sortie; **He lives out of town** Il habite en dehors de la ville

outdoor (*pool*) en plein air

outside dehors; **It's outside** C'est dehors; **outside the house** en dehors de la maison

oven le four

over (*on top of*) au-dessus de; (*nished*) terminé(e); **over the window** au-dessus de la fenêtre; **over here** ici; **It's over there** C'est là-bas; **over the holidays** pendant les vacances **to**

overcharge faire payer trop cher **overdone** (*food*) trop cuit(e) **to owe** devoir; **I owe you...** Je vous dois...

own propre; **It's his own company** C'est sa propre société; **on my own** tout seul

to own (*land, house, company*) être propriétaire de **owner** le/la propriétaire

oxygen l'oxygène *m* **oyster** l'huître *f*

P

pacemaker le stimulateur (cardiaque) **to**

pack (*luggage*) faire les bagages **package**

tour le voyage organisé **packet** le paquet

paid payé(e) **pain** la douleur **painful**

douloureux(-euse) **painkiller**

l'analgésique *m* **to paint** peindre **painting**
(*picture*) le tableau **pair** la paire **palace** le
palais **pale** pale blue bleu pâle
pan (*saucepan*) la casserole; (*frying pan*) la poêle **panniers** (*for*
bike) les sacoches *fpl* **panties** la culotte **pants** (*men's*
underwear) le slip **panty liner** le protège-slip **paper** le papier
paragliding le parapente **parcel** le colis **pardon** Pardon?
Comment?; **I beg your pardon?** Pardon?
parents les parents *mpl* **park** le
parc **to park** garer (la voiture)
parking meter le parcmètre
partner (*business*) l'associé *m*,
l'associée *m*
(*boyfriend/girlfriend*) le
compagnon, la compagne
party (*group*) le groupe; (*celebration*) la fête; (*in the evening*) la
soirée
pass (*bus, train*) la carte; (*mountain*) le col
to pass **Can you pass me the salt, please?** Vous pouvez me passer le
sel, s'il vous plaît?
passenger le passager, la passagère
passport le passeport **password** le
mot de passe **pasta** les pâtes *fpl* **pastry**
(*cake*) la pâtisserie **path** le chemin
patient (*in hospital*) le patient, la patiente
to pay payer; **I'd like to pay** Je voudrais payer; **Where do I**
pay? Où est-ce qu'il faut payer?
payment le paiement **payphone** le
téléphone public **peach** la pêche
peanut la cacahuète *f* **pear** la poire
peas les petits pois **pedalo** le

pédalo® **pedestrian** le piéton, la piétonne **to peel** éplucher
peg (*for clothes*) la pince à linge; (*for tent*) le piquet **pen** le stylo **pencil** le crayon
penfriend le correspondant, la correspondante
pensioner le retraité, la retraitée **people** les gens *mpl*
pepper (*spice*) le poivre; (*vegetable*) le poivron **per** par; **per day** par jour; **per person** par personne **performance** (*in theatre*) le spectacle; (*in cinema*) la séance **perfume** le parfum **perhaps** peut-être **perm** la permanente **permit** le permis **person** la personne
petrol l'essence *f*; **unleaded petrol** l'essence sans plomb
petrol pump la pompe à essence **petrol station** la station-service **petrol tank** le réservoir **pharmacy** la pharmacie
phone le téléphone; **by phone** par téléphone **to phone** téléphoner **phonebook** l'annuaire *m*
phonebox la cabine (téléphonique) **phone call** l'appel *m* **phonocard** la télécarte
photo la photo; **to take a photo** prendre une photo
photocopy la photocopie **to photocopy** photocopier
photograph la photographie **to pick** (*choose*) choisir
pickpocket le pickpocket
picnic le pique-nique; **to have a picnic** pique-niquer **picture** (*painting*) le tableau; (*photo*) la photo
pie (*fruit, meat*) la tourte
piece le morceau **pig** le cochon **pill** la pilule **pillow** l'oreiller *m* **pilot** le pilote
pin l'épingle *f* **pineapple** le pamplemousse

pink rose pipe (*drains*) le tuyau **pity**

What a pity! Quel dommage!

pizza la pizza **place**

l'endroit *m*

place of birth le lieu de naissance

plain (*yoghurt*) nature **plan** (*of town*)

le plan **plane** (*aircraft*) l'avion *m*

plaster (*sticking plaster*) le sparadrap; (*for broken limb, on wall*) le plâtre

plastic en plastique **plastic bag** le sac en plastique **plate**

l'assiette *f* **platform** (*railway*) le quai; **Which platform?** Quel quai?

play (*theatre*) la pièce

to play (*games*) jouer à; (*instrument*) jouer de; **I play the guitar**

Je joue de la guitare **please** s'il vous plaît **pleased** content(e); **Pleased to meet you!** Enchanté(e)!

plug (*electrical*) la prise; (*for sink*) le bouchon

to plug in brancher **plum** la

prune **plumber** le plombier **pm**

de l'après-midi **poached** (*egg, sh*)

poché(e) **pocket** la poche **police**

la police **policeman** l'agent *m* de police

police station le commissariat; (*in small town*) la gendarmerie

policewoman la femme agent **polish** (*for shoes*) le cirage **polite**

poli(e) **pool** la piscine **poor** pauvre **popular** populaire **pork** le porc

porter (*in hotel*) le portier; (*at station*) le porteur

portion la portion **Portugal** le Portugal

Portuguese portugais(e); (*language*) le portugais

possible possible **post by post** par courrier **to post**

poster **postbox** la boîte aux lettres **postcard** la carte

postale **postcode** le code postal **poster** l'ache *f*

postman le facteur **post office** la poste

postwoman la factrice **pot (for cooking)** la casserole

potato la pomme de terre; **baked potato** la pomme de terre

cuite au four; **boiled potatoes** les pommes vapeur; **fried potatoes** les pommes frites; **mashed potatoes** la purée; **roast potatoes** les pommes de terre rôties; **sautéed potatoes** les pommes de terre sautées

potato salad la salade de pommes de terre

pottery la poterie **pound (money)** la livre

powder la poudre

powdered en poudre

power (electricity) le courant

pram le landau **prawn** la

crevette rose **to prefer** préférer

pregnant enceinte; **I'm pregnant** Je suis enceinte **to**

prepare préparer **prescription** l'ordonnance *f* **present**

(*gift*) le cadeau **president** le président **pressure** la

pression **pretty** joli(e) **price** le prix **price list** le tarif

priest le prêtre **print (photo)** la photo **to print**

imprimer **printer** l'imprimante *f*

printout la sortie papier **private**

privé(e)

probably probablement; **He'll probably come tomorrow** Il

viendra probablement demain

problem le problème **programme (TV,**

radio) l'émission *f* **to promise**

promettre

to pronounce prononcer; **How's it pronounced?** Comment ça

se prononce? **public**

public(ique) **public holiday** le

jour férié **pudding** le dessert
to pull tirer **pullover** le pull
pulse le pouls
pump (*for bike*) la pompe; **petrol pump** la pompe à essence
puncture la crevaison **purple** violet(te)
purpose le but; **on purpose** exprès
purse le porte-monnaie **to push**
pousser **pushchair** la poussette **to put**
(*place*) mettre **Pyrenees** les Pyrénées
mpl

Q

quality la qualité **quantity** la
quantité **quarter** le quart; **a**
quarter of an hour un quart
d'heure **question** la
question; **to ask a question**
poser une question **queue** la
queue **to queue** faire la
queue **quick** rapide **quickly**
vite **quiet** (*place*) tranquille
quilt la couette
quite (*rather*) assez; **quite good** pas mal; **quite expensive** assez
cher; **I'm not quite** sure Je n'en suis pas tout à fait sûr; **quite a lot**
pas mal

R

racket la raquette **radiator** le
radiateur

radio la radio; **car radio** l'autoradio *m*

railway le chemin de fer **railway station** la gare **rain** la pluie

to rain It's raining Il pleut **raincoat** l'imperméable *m*

rare (*uncommon*) rare; (*steak*) saignant(e) **raspberry** la framboise

rat le rat **rate** (*price*) le tarif

rate of exchange le taux de change

rather plutôt; **rather expensive** plutôt cher; **I'd rather stay in tonight** J'aimerais mieux rester à la maison ce soir **raw** cru(e)

razor le rasoir

razor blades les lames de rasoir **to**

read lire **ready** prêt(e) **real** vrai(e)

really vraiment **receipt** le reçu

reception desk la réception

receptionist le/la réceptionniste **to**

recharge (*battery*) recharger **recipe** la recette

to recognize reconnaître **to**

recommend recommander **red**

rouge **re** II la recharge **refund** le

remboursement **region** la région

to register (*at hotel*) s'inscrire sur le registre

registered (*letter*) recommandé(e) **registration**

form la che **relation** (*family*) le parent, la

parente **relationship** les rapports *mpl* **to remain** rester

remember se rappeler; **I don't remember** Je ne m'en rappelle

pas; **I can't remember his name** Je ne me souviens pas de son nom

[Your Click Matters](#)

remote control la télécommande
rent le loyer **to rent** louer
rental la location **to**
repair réparer **to**
repeat répéter **to**
reply répondre
to require exiger; **What qualifications are required?** Quels
sont les diplômes requis? **to**
rescue sauver **reservation** la
réservation **to reserve** réserver
reserved réservé(e)
resident (*in country*) le résident, la résidente; (*in street*) le
riverain, la riveraine; (*in hotel*) le/la pensionnaire
rest (*relaxation*) le repos; (*remainder*) le reste; **the rest of the**
money le reste de l'argent
to rest se reposer **restaurant** le
restaurant **restaurant car** le wagon-
restaurant **retired** retraité(e) **to return**
(*to go back*) retourner **return ticket** le
billet aller-retour
to reverse faire marche arrière; **to reverse the charges** appeler
en PCV
reverse gear la marche arrière
rice le riz **rich** (*person, food*) riche
to ride (*on horseback*) monter à cheval; (*on bike*) faire du vélo **right**
(*correct*) exact(e); **to be right** avoir raison; **You're right** Tu
as raison; **That's right** C'est vrai; **on/to the right** à droite
right of way la priorité **ring**
(*on finger*) la bague **ripe** mûr(e)
river la rivière

Riviera (*French*) la Côte d'Azur
road la route **roast** rôti(e) **roll**
(*bread*) le petit pain **roof** le toit
room (*in house*) la pièce; (*in hotel*) la chambre; (*space*) la place; **double room** la chambre pour deux personnes; **single room** la chambre pour une personne; **family room** la chambre pour une famille
room number le numéro de chambre **room service** le service dans les chambres **rosé wine** le rosé **row** (*line, theatre*) la rangée
rubber (*material*) le caoutchouc; (*eraser*) la gomme
rubbish les ordures *fpl* **rucksack** le sac à dos **to run** courir
rush hour l'heure *f* de pointe

S

sad triste **saddle** la selle
safe (*for valuables*) le coffre-fort **safe** sans danger; **Is it safe?** Ce n'est pas dangereux? **safety belt** la ceinture de sécurité **safety pin** l'épingle *f* de sûreté **to sail** (*sport, leisure*) faire de la voile
sailboard la planche à voile
sailing (*sport*) la voile **sailing boat** le voilier
salad la salade; **green salad** la salade verte; **mixed salad** la salade composée; **salad dressing** la vinaigrette
sales (*in shops*) les soldes *fpl* **salesman** le vendeur
sales rep le représentant, la représentante **saleswoman** la vendeuse

salmon le saumon

salt le sel **salt water**

l'eau salée **salty** salé(e)

same même; **Have a good weekend!** – **The same to you!** Bon week-end! – Vous de même!

sand le sable **sandals** les sandales *fpl*

sandwich le sandwich; **toasted sandwich** le croque-monsieur

sanitary towels les serviettes *fpl* hygiéniques **sardines** les sardines *fpl* **satellite dish** l'antenne *f* parabolique

satellite TV la télévision par satellite

Saturday samedi **sauce**

la sauce **saucepan** la

casserole **saucer** la

soucoupe **sausage** la

saucisse **savoury** salé(e)

to say dire

scarf (*headscarf*) le foulard; (*woollen*) l'écharpe *f*

scenery le paysage **schedule** l'horaire *m*

school l'école *f*; **at school** à l'école; **to go to school** aller à

l'école; **after school** après l'école; **primary school** l'école primaire

scissors les ciseaux *mpl*

score (*of match*) le score; **What's the score?** Quel est le score?;

to score a goal marquer un but

Scotland l'Écosse *f* **Scottish** écossais(e)

screen (*on computer, TV*) l'écran *m*

screw la vis **screwdriver** le tournevis

scuba diving la plongée sous-marine **sea** la mer

seafood les fruits *mpl* de mer

seaside le bord de la mer; **at the seaside** au bord de la mer **season** (*of year*) la saison; **high season** la haute saison; **in**

season de saison

season ticket la carte d'abonnement **seat** (*chair*) le siège; (*in bus, train*) la place **seatbelt**

la ceinture de sécurité **second** second(e); **a**

second une seconde

second class de seconde classe; **to travel second class** voyager

en seconde classe

secretary le/la secrétaire **to**

see voir

self-service le libre-service **to sell** vendre; **Do you**

sell...? Vous vendez...?

Sellotape[®] le Scotch[®] **to**

send envoyer

senior citizen la personne du troisième âge

sensible raisonnable **separated** séparé(e)

separately to pay separately payer séparément

September septembre **septic tank** la fosse septique

serious (*accident, problem*) grave **to serve** servir

service (*in restaurant, shop*) le service; (*church*) l'o ce m; **Is**

service included? Le service est compris?; **service charge** le

service; **service station** la station-service

to service (*car, washing machine*) réviser

serviette la serviette **set menu** le menu à

prix xe

several plusieurs; **several times** plusieurs fois

shade l'ombre *f*; **in the shade** à l'ombre **shallow**

peu profond(e) **shampoo** le shampooing

shampoo and set le shampooing et la mise en plis **to**

share partager **to shave** se raser **shaver** le rasoir

shaving cream la crème à raser **she** elle **sheet** (*for bed*)
le drap **sherry** le xérès **ship** le navire
shirt la chemise **shock absorber**
l'amortisseur *m* **shoe** la chaussure
shoelaces les lacets *mpl* **shoe polish** le
cirage **shoe shop** le magasin de
chaussures **shop** le magasin
shop assistant le vendeur, la vendeuse
shopping les courses *fpl*; **to go shopping** (*for pleasure*) faire du
shopping; (*for food*) faire les courses
shopping centre le centre commercial
shop window la vitrine **short** court(e)
shorts le short **short-sighted** myope
shoulder l'épaule *f* **show** le spectacle **to**
show montrer
shower (*bath*) la douche; (*rain*) l'averse *f*; **to take a shower**
prendre une douche
shower gel le gel douche
shrimp la crevette **shut**
(*closed*) fermé(e) **to shut**
fermer
shutters (*outside*) les volets *mpl* **shuttle**
service la navette
sick (*ill*) malade; **I feel sick** J'ai envie de vomir **side**
le côté **side dish** la garniture
sightseeing to go sightseeing faire du tourisme **to**
sign signer **signature** la signature **silk** la soie **silver**
l'argent *m* **SIM card** la carte SIM
similar similar to semblable à; **They're similar** Ils se
ressemblent
since (*time*) depuis; (*given that*) puisque; **since 1974** depuis 1974; **since**
you're not French puisque vous n'êtes pas français

to sing chanter

single (*unmarried*) célibataire; (*bed, room*) pour une personne **single**

ticket l'aller *m* simple **sister** la sœur **sister-in-law** la belle-sœur **to sit**
s'asseoir; **Sit down, please!** Asseyez-vous, s'il vous plaît!

site (*website*) le site

size (*clothes*) la taille; (*shoes*) la pointure **skateboard** le
skate-board

ski le ski **to ski** faire
du ski

ski boots les chaussures *fpl* de ski **to**

skid dérapier **skiing** le ski

ski instructor le moniteur, la monitrice de ski **ski**

lift le remonte-pente **skimmed skimmed milk** le
lait écrémé **skin** la peau

ski pass le forfait

ski pole, ski stick le bâton de ski **ski run,**

ski piste la piste de ski **skirt** la jupe

to sleep dormir; **to go to sleep** s'endormir

sleeper (*on train*) la couchette **sleeping bag** le
sac de couchage **sleeping car** la voiture-lit

sleeping pill le somnifère **slice** (*bread, cake,*
ham) la tranche **sliced bread** le pain de mie en

tranches **slide** (*photograph*) la diapositive

slightly légèrement **slow** lent(e) **slowly**
lentement

small petit(e); **smaller than plus** petit(e) que

smell l'odeur *f*; **a bad smell** une mauvaise odeur; **a nice smell**
une bonne odeur

to smile sourire **to smoke** fumer; **I don't smoke** Je ne fume pas; **Can I**
smoke? Je peux fumer?

SMS message le message SMS

snack to have a snack manger un petit quelque chose
snack bar le snack-bar **snail** l'escargot *m* **snow** la neige
to snow neiger; **It's snowing** Il neige
snowboarding to go snowboarding faire du snowboard **snow chains**
les chaînes *fpl*
so (*therefore*) alors; (*in comparisons*) aussi; **The shop was closed so I
didn't buy it** Le magasin était fermé, alors je ne l'ai pas acheté; **It's
not so expensive as the other one** Ce n'est pas aussi cher que
l'autre; **so do I** moi aussi; **so much/so many...** tellement de...; **I think
so** Je crois
soap le savon
soap powder (*detergent*) la lessive
socket (*for plug*) la prise de courant
socks les chaussettes *fpl* **soda water** le
soda **sofa bed** le canapé-lit **soft drink**
la boisson non alcoolisée **software** le
logiciel **sole** (*shoe*) la semelle
some du, de la, des; **Would you like some bread?** Voulez-vous du
pain?; **some books** des livres; **some of them** quelques uns
someone quelqu'un
something quelque chose
sometimes quelquefois **son**
le ls **son-in-law** le gendre
song la chanson
soon bientôt; **as soon as possible** dès que possible **sore
to have a sore throat** avoir mal à la gorge **sorry** Sorry!
Pardon!; **I'm sorry!** Je suis désolé(e)! **sort** la sorte **soup**
la soupe **sour** aigre **south** le sud **souvenir** le souvenir
space la place **spade**
la pelle **Spain**
l'Espagne *f*

Spaniard l'Espagnol *m*, l'Espagnole *f* **Spanish**
espagnol(e)

spare parts les pièces *fpl* de rechange

spare tyre le pneu de rechange **spare**

wheel la roue de secours

sparkling sparkling water l'eau gazeuse; **sparkling wine** le mousseux

to speak parler; **Do you speak English?** Vous parlez anglais?

speaker (*loudspeaker*) le haut-parleur **special** spécial(e) **speciality** la

spécialité **speedboat** le hors-bord **speed limit** la limitation de

vitesse **speedometer** le compteur **to spell How is it spelt?**

Comment ça s'écrit? **to spend** (*money*) dépenser **spicy** épicé(e)

spinach les épinards *mpl* **spirits** (*alcohol*) les spiritueux *mpl* **spite** in

spite of malgré **spoon** la cuiller **sport** le sport

sports centre le centre sportif **sports**

shop le magasin de sports **spring**

(*season*) le printemps **square** (*in town*)

la place

squash le squash **squid** le calmar

stadium le stade **stain** la tache

stairs l'escalier *m* **stalls** (*in*

theatre) l'orchestre *m* **stamp** le

timbre **to stand** être debout

start le début; **at the start of the Im** au début du Im; **from**

the start dès le début

to start commencer; (*car*) démarrer; **What time does it start?** À

quelle heure est-ce que ça commence?; **The car won't start** La

voiture ne veut pas démarrer

starter (*in meal*) le hors d'œuvre **station** la gare **stationer's** la

papeterie **stay** le séjour; **Enjoy your stay!** Bon séjour! **to stay**

(*remain*) rester; **I'm staying at the... hotel** Je suis à

l'hôtel...; **Where are you staying?** – In a **hotel** Où logez-vous? – À l'hôtel; **to stay the night** passer la nuit; **We stayed in Paris for a few days** Nous avons passé quelques jours à Paris **steak** le bifteck **to steal** voler **steamed** cuit(e) à la vapeur **steering wheel** le volant **stepbrother** le demi-frère **stepdaughter** la belle-fille **stepfather** le beau-père **stepmother** la belle-mère **stepsister** la demi-sœur **stepson** le beau-fils **stereo** la chaîne (stéréo) **sterling** la livre sterling **steward (on plane)** le steward **stewardess (on plane)** l'hôtesse *f* **sticking-plaster** le sparadrap **still still water** l'eau *f* plate **sting** la piqûre **to sting** piquer **stockings** les bas *mpl* **stomach** l'estomac *m*; **He's got stomachache** Il a mal au ventre **stone** la pierre **stop bus stop** l'arrêt *m* de bus **to stop** arrêter; **Do you stop at the station?** Vous vous arrêtez à la gare?; **to stop doing** arrêter de faire; **to stop smoking** arrêter de fumer **store (shop)** le magasin **storey** l'étage *m* **straightaway** tout de suite **straight straight on** tout droit **strange** bizarre **straw (for drinking)** la paille **strawberry** la fraise **street** la rue **street map** le plan de la ville

strike la grève; **to be on strike** être en grève **striped** rayé(e)
stroke (*medical*) l'attaque *f* (d'apoplexie)
strong fort(e) **stuck** **It's stuck** C'est coincé **student** l'étudiant *m*, l'étudiante *f* **student discount** le tarif étudiant **stu ed** farci(e) **stupid** stupide
subway (*train*) le métro; (*passage*) le passage souterrain
suddenly soudain **suede** le daim **sugar** le sucre **to suggest** suggérer
suit (*man's*) le costume; (*woman's*) le tailleur
suitcase la valise **summer** l'été *m*
summer holidays les vacances *fpl* d'été **sun** le soleil
to sunbathe prendre un bain de soleil
sunblock l'écran *m* total **sunburn** le coup de soleil **suncream** la crème solaire
Sunday le dimanche
sunglasses les lunettes *fpl* de soleil
sunny **It's sunny** Il fait beau **sunroof** le toit ouvrant **sunscreen** (*lotion*) l'écran *m* solaire **sunshade** le parasol
sunstroke l'insolation *f* **suntan** le bronzage **suntan lotion** le lait solaire
supermarket le supermarché
supplement le supplément
to surf faire du surf; **to surf the Net** surfer sur Internet
surfboard la planche de surf **surname** le nom de famille
surprise la surprise; **What a surprise!** Quelle surprise!
sweater le pull **sweatshirt** le sweat **sweet** (*not savoury*) sucré(e)

sweet (*dessert*) le dessert; **sweets** les bonbons *mpl* **to swim** nager **swimming pool** la piscine **swimsuit** le maillot de bain **swing** (*for children*) la balançoire **Swiss** suisse **switch** le bouton **to switch o** éteindre **to switch on** allumer **Switzerland** la Suisse **swollen** en é(e)

T

table la table **tablecloth** la nappe
tablespoon la grande cuiller
table tennis le tennis de table
tablet le comprimé **tailor's** le tailleur

to take (*medicine, sugar*) prendre; (*take with you*) emporter; (*exam*) passer; (*subject at school*) faire; **Do you take sugar?** Vous prenez du sucre?; **I'll take you to the airport** Je vais vous emmener à l'aéroport; **How long does it take?** Ça prend combien de temps?; **It takes about one hour** Ça prend environ une heure; **We take credit cards** Nous acceptons les cartes de crédit

take away (*food*) à emporter

to take o (*plane*) décoller; (*clothes*) enlever **to**

take out sortir **to talk to** parler à **tall** grand(e)

tampons les tampons *mpl* hygiéniques **tangerine** la mandarine **tank petrol tank** le réservoir **tap** le robinet

tap water l'eau *f* du robinet **tape** (*video*) la cassette

vidéo **tart** la tarte **taste** le goût **to taste** goûter; **Can I taste some?** Je peux goûter?

taxi le taxi

taxi driver le chauffeur de taxi **taxi rank** la station de taxis

tea le thé; **herbal tea** la tisane; **lemon tea** le thé au citron; **tea**

with milk le thé au lait
teabag le sachet de thé **to**
teach enseigner **teacher** le
professeur **team** l'équipe *f*
teapot la théière **teaspoon** la petite cuiller
teenager l'adolescent *m*, l'adolescente *f* **teeth**
les dents *fpl* **telephone** le téléphone **to**
telephone téléphoner **telephone box** la cabine
téléphonique **telephone call** le coup de
téléphone **telephone card** la télécarte
telephone directory l'annuaire *m* **telephone**
number le numéro de téléphone
television la télévision; **on television tonight** à la télévision ce
soir
to tell dire
temperature la température; **to have a temperature** avoir de la fièvre
tenant le/la locataire **tennis** le tennis
tennis ball la balle de tennis **tennis**
court le court de tennis **tennis racket**
la raquette de tennis **tent** la tente
tent peg le piquet de tente **terminal**
(*airport*) l'aéroport *f* **terrace** la
terrasse **to test** (*to try out*) tester
to text envoyer un SMS (à); **I'll text you** Je t'envoierai un SMS **text**
message le SMS, le texto
than que; **Diana sings better than me** Diana chante mieux que
moi; **more than you** plus que toi; **more than five** plus de cinq
thank you merci; **thank you very much** merci beaucoup **that** ce, cet,
cette; **that cat** ce chat; **that man** cet homme; **that**
dress cette robe; **that one** celui-là, celle-là; **to think that...** penser
que... **the** le, la, l', les **theatre** le théâtre
their (*sing*) leur; (*plural*) leurs; **their car** leur voiture; **their**

children leurs enfants

them les; leur; eux; elles; **I didn't know them** Je ne les
connaissais pas; **I gave them some brochures** Je leur ai donné des
brochures; **It's for them** C'est pour eux

there (*over there*) là; **there is, there are** il y a; **there was** il y
avait; **there'll be** il y aura

therefore donc **thermometer** le
thermomètre **these** ces; **these ones** ceux-
ci, celles-ci **they** ils, elles **thick** (*not thin*)
épais(se) **thief** le voleur, la voleuse **thin**
(*person*) mince

thing la chose; **my things** mes affaires **to**
think penser **thirsty I'm thirsty** J'ai soif

this ce, cet, cette; **this cat** ce chat; **this man** cet homme; **this**
dress cette robe; **this one** celui-ci, celle-ci

those ces; **those ones** ceux-là, celles-là **throat** la
gorge

through par; **to go through** Rouen passer par Rouen; **a through**
train un train direct; **from May through to September** de mai
jusqu'à septembre **Thursday** jeudi

ticket (*for plane, train, theatre, concert*) le billet; (*for bus, tube, cinema,*
museum) le ticket; **a single ticket** un aller simple; **a return ticket** un
aller-retour; **a book of tickets** un carnet de tickets

ticket collector le contrôleur, la contrôlease **ticket o**
ce le guichet

tide (*sea*) la marée; **low tide** la marée basse; **high tide** la marée
haute

tidy bien rangé(e) **tie** la
cravate **tight** (*tting*)
serré(e) **tights** le collant
till (*cash desk*) la caisse

till (*until*) jusqu'à; **till 2 o'clock** jusqu'à deux heures **time** le temps; **this time** cette fois; **What time is it?** Quelle

heure est-il?; **on time** à l'heure

timetable l'horaire *m* **tin** (*can*)

la boîte **tin-opener** l'ouvre-

boîtes *m* **tip** (*to waiter*) le

pourboire **tipped** (*cigarette*) à

bout ltre **tired** fatigué(e) **tissues**

les kleenex® *mpl*

to à; (*with name of country*) en, au; **to London** à Londres; **to France** en

France; **to Canada** au Canada; **to the airport** à l'aéroport; **from nine**

o'clock to half past three de neuf heures à trois heures et demie;

something to drink quelque chose à boire

toast le pain grillé **tobacconist's** le

bureau de tabac **today** aujourd'hui

toe le doigt de pied **together**

ensemble

toilet les toilettes *fpl* **toilet paper** le

papier hygiénique **toiletries** les

articles *fpl* de toilette **toll** (*motorway*)

le péage

tomato la tomate; **tinned tomatoes** les tomates en boîte **tomato soup**

la soupe à la tomate

tomorrow demain; **tomorrow morning** demain matin;

tomorrow afternoon demain après-midi; **tomorrow evening** demain soir

tongue la langue **tonic**

water le tonic

tonight (*this evening*) ce soir; (*during the night*) cette nuit **too** (*also*)

aussi; (*excessively*) trop; **My sister came too** Ma sœur est venue

aussi; **The water's too hot** L'eau est trop chaude; **too late** trop tard;

too much trop; **too much noise** trop de bruit; too many trop; **too many people** trop de gens

tooth la dent **toothache** le mal de dents **toothbrush** la brosse à dents

toothpaste le dentifrice **toothpick**

le cure-dent **top** the top oor le dernier étage **top (of bottle)** le bouchon; *(of pen)* le capuchon; *(of pyjamas,*

bikini) le haut; *(of hill, mountain)* le sommet; on top of sur

total (amount) le total **to**

touch toucher **tough**

(meat) dur(e)

tour (trip) l'excursion *f*; *(of museum)* la visite; **guided tour** la visite guidée

tour guide le/la guide **tour operator**

le tour-opérateur **tourist** le/la

touriste **tourist** le syndicat

d'initiative **tourist ticket** le billet

touristique **towel** la serviette **tower**

la tour

town la ville; **town centre** le centre-ville; **town plan** le plan de la ville

toy le jouet

toyshop le magasin de jouets

tra c la circulation **tra**

c **jam** l'embouteillage *m* **tra**

c **lights** les feux *mpl*

tra c **warden** le contractuel, la contractuelle

train le train; **by train** par le train; **the next train** le prochain

train; **the rst train** le premier train; **the last train** le dernier train

trainers les baskets *fpl*

tranquillizer le tranquillisant **to**

translate traduire **to travel**

voyager

travel agent's l'agence *f* de voyages

travel guide le guide **travel insurance**

l'assurance *f* voyage **travel sickness** le mal

des transports **traveller's cheque** le chèque

de voyage

tray le plateau **treatment**

le traitement **tree** l'arbre

m **trip** l'excursion *f*

trolley (*for luggage, shopping*) le chariot

trousers le pantalon **truck** le camion **true**

vrai(e) **trunk** (*luggage*) la malle

trunks **swimming trunks** le maillot (de bain) **to try**

essayer

to try on (*clothes, shoes*) essayer

t-shirt le tee-shirt

Tuesday mardi

tuna le thon **to**

turn tourner

to turn o (*light, cooker, TV*) éteindre; (*tap*) fermer **to turn**

on (*light, cooker, TV*) allumer; (*tap*) ouvrir **turquoise**

(*colour*) turquoise

twice deux fois; **twice a week** deux fois par semaine **twin**

twin room la chambre à deux lits **twins** (*male*) les

jumeaux; (*female*) les jumelles **twisted** tordu(e) **tyre** le

pneu

tyre pressure la pression des pneus

U

ugly laid(e)

ulcer l'ulcère *m*; **mouth ulcer** l'aphte *m*
umbrella le parapluie; (*sunshade*) le parasol
uncle l'oncle *m* **uncomfortable** inconfortable
under sous; **children under 10** les enfants de moins de 10 ans
undercooked pas assez cuit(e) **underground** le métro **underpants**
(*men's underwear*) le slip
to understand comprendre; **I don't understand** Je ne
comprends pas; **Do you understand?** Vous comprenez?
underwear les sous-vêtements *mpl* **unfortunately**
malheureusement **United Kingdom** le Royaume-Uni **United**
States les États-Unis *mpl* **university** l'université *f*
unleaded petrol l'essence *f* sans plomb
unlikely peu probable **to unlock** ouvrir **to**
unpack déballer ses affaires **unpleasant**
désagréable
up up here ici; **up there** là-haut; **What's up?** Qu'est-ce qu'il y
a?; **up to 50** jusqu'à 50; **up to now** jusqu'à présent
upstairs en haut; **the people upstairs** les gens du dessus
urgent urgent(e) **us** nous; **Can you help us?** Pouvez-vous nous
aider?
USA les USA *mpl*

to use utiliser **useful**
utile **usual**
habituel(le) **usually**
d'habitude

V

vacancy (*in hotel*) la chambre libre
vacant libre **vacation** les vacances *fpl*
vacuum cleaner l'aspirateur *m*
valid valable

[Your Click Matters](#)

valuable d'une grande valeur

value la valeur

VAT la TVA **veal** le

veau

vegan végétalien(ne); **I'm vegan** Je suis végétalien(ne) **vegetables** les légumes *mpl*

vegetarian végétarien(ne); **I'm vegetarian** Je suis végétarien(ne)

very très; **very much** beaucoup; **I like it very much** Je l'aime beaucoup

vest le maillot de corps **via** par

video (*machine*) le magnétoscope; (*cassette*) la vidéo **to**

video (*from TV*) enregistrer **video camera** la caméra

vidéo **video recorder** le magnétoscope **view** la vue

village le village

vinegar le vinaigre

vineyard le vignoble

virus le virus **visa** le

visa **visit** le séjour **to**

visit visiter

visiting hours les heures *fpl* de visite **visitor**

le visiteur, la visiteuse **voicemail** la

messagerie vocale **voucher** le bon

W

waist la taille **to wait for** attendre

waiter le serveur **waiting room** la

salle d'attente **waitress** la

serveuse **to wake up** se réveiller

Wales le pays de Galles

[Your Click Matters](#)

walk la promenade; **to go for a walk** faire une promenade **to walk** marcher; (*go on foot*) aller à pied **walking boots** les chaussures *fpl* de marche **walking stick** la canne **wall** le mur **wallet** le portefeuille **to want** vouloir **ward** (*hospital*) la salle

wardrobe l'armoire *f* **warehouse** l'entrepôt *m*

warm chaud(e); **It's warm outside** Il fait bon dehors **to warm up** (*milk, food*) faire chauffer **to wash** laver

wash and blow-dry le shampoing et brushing

washing machine la machine à laver **washing**

powder la lessive **washing-up bowl** la cuvette

washing-up liquid le produit à vaisselle **wasp** la

guêpe **waste bin** la poubelle **watch** la montre **to**

watch (*look at*) regarder

water l'eau *f*; **bottled water** l'eau en bouteille; **cold water** l'eau

froide; **drinking water** l'eau potable; **hot water** l'eau chaude;

sparkling water l'eau gazeuse; **still water** l'eau plate

water heater le chauffe-eau **watermelon** la

pastèque **to waterski** faire du ski nautique

watersports les sports *mpl* nautiques

waterwings les bracelets *mpl* gonflables

waves (*on sea*) les vagues *fpl* **way in**

l'entrée *f*

way out la sortie

we nous

weak (*co ee, tea*) léger(ère); (*person*) faible **to**

wear porter **weather** le temps

weather forecast la météo

web (*internet*) le Web **website**

le site web **wedding** le mariage

wedding present le cadeau de mariage **Wednesday**

mercredi

week la semaine; **last week** la semaine dernière; **next week** la semaine prochaine; **per week** par semaine; **this week** cette semaine; **during the week** pendant la semaine

weekday le jour de semaine

weekend le week-end; **next weekend** le week-end prochain; **this weekend** ce week-end

to weigh peser **weight** le poids **welcome!** bienvenu(e)! **well** bien; **I'm**

very well Je vais très bien; **He's not well** Il est sou rant

well done (*steak*) bien cuit(e) **Welsh** gallois(e); (*language*) le gallois **west** l'ouest *m*

wet mouillé(e); **wet weather** le temps pluvieux **wetsuit** la combinaison de plongée

what? quoi?; **What colour is it?** C'est de quelle couleur?; **What is it?** Qu'est-ce que c'est?; **I saw what happened** J'ai vu ce qui arrivé; **Tell me what you did** Dites-moi ce que vous avez fait

wheel la roue

wheelchair le fauteuil roulant

when? quand? **where?** où?

whether si; **I don't know whether to go or not** Je ne sais pas si je dois y aller ou non

which? quel(le)?; **Which one?** Lequel, laquelle?; **Which ones?** Lesquels, lesquelles? **while in a while** bientôt; (*very soon*) tout à l'heure **whisky** le whisky **white** blanc (blanche) **who?** qui?

whole entier(ière) **wholemeal bread** le pain complet **whose** **Whose is it?**

C'est à qui? **why?** pourquoi? **wide** large **widow** la veuve **widower** le veuf **wife** la femme **wild** (*animal*) sauvage **to win** gagner

window la fenêtre; (*in car, train*) la vitre; **shop window** la vitrine

windscreen le pare-brise **windscreen wipers**

les essuie-glaces *mpl* **to windsurf** faire de la planche à voile **windy** **It's windy** Il y a du vent

wine le vin; **dry wine** le vin sec; **house wine** le vin en pichet; **red wine** le vin rouge; **rosé wine** le vin rosé; **sparkling wine** le vin mousseux; **white wine** le vin blanc; **wine list** la carte des vins

wing mirror le rétroviseur latéral **winter** l'hiver *m*

with avec; **with ice** avec des glaçons; **with milk** avec du lait

without sans; **without ice** sans glaçons; **without milk** sans lait

woman la femme **wonderful** merveilleux

(-euse) **wood** le

bois **wooden** en

bois **wool** la laine

woollen en laine

word le mot

work le travail; **at work** au travail

to work (*person*) travailler; (*machine, car*) marcher; **It doesn't**

work ça ne marche pas

world le monde **worried**

inquiet(-iète) **worse** pire

worth **It's worth...** Ça vaut... **to wrap**

(*parcel*) emballer **wrapping paper** le

papier cadeau **wrist** le poignet

to write écrire; **Please write it down** Vous pouvez l'écrire, s'il vous plaît? **wrong** faux (fausse); **What's wrong?** Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?

X

X-ray la radiographie

[Your Click Matters](#)

Y

yacht le yacht

year l'an *m*; l'année *f*; **a year ago** il y a un an; **this year** cette année; **next year** l'année prochaine; **last year** l'année dernière

yearly annuel(le) **yellow**

jaune

yes oui; **yes, please** oui, merci

yesterday hier; **yesterday morning** hier matin; **yesterday evening** hier soir

yet not yet pas encore

yoghurt le yaourt; **plain yoghurt** le yaourt nature **yolk** le jaune d'œuf

you (*familiar*) tu; (*polite, plural*) vous **young** jeune

your (*familiar sing*) ton, ta; (*familiar plural*) tes; (*collective or polite singular*) votre; (*collective or polite plural*) vos

youth hostel l'auberge *f* de jeunesse

Z

zip la fermeture éclair

zoo le zoo **zoom lens** le

zoom **zucchini** la

courgette

Giftbooks4u.com